

# Package ‘fpc’

September 24, 2024

**Title** Flexible Procedures for Clustering

**Version** 2.2-13

**Date** 2024-09-23

**Depends** R (>= 2.0)

**Imports** MASS, cluster, mclust, flexmix, prabclus, class, diptest, robustbase, kernlab, grDevices, graphics, methods, stats, utils, parallel

**Suggests** tclust, pdfCluster, mvtnorm

**Description** Various methods for clustering and cluster validation. Fixed point clustering. Linear regression clustering. Clustering by merging Gaussian mixture components. Symmetric and asymmetric discriminant projections for visualisation of the separation of groupings. Cluster validation statistics for distance based clustering including corrected Rand index. Standardisation of cluster validation statistics by random clusterings and comparison between many clustering methods and numbers of clusters based on this. Cluster-wise cluster stability assessment. Methods for estimation of the number of clusters: Calinski-Harabasz, Tibshirani and Walther's prediction strength, Fang and Wang's bootstrap stability. Gaussian/multinomial mixture fitting for mixed continuous/categorical variables. Variable-wise statistics for cluster interpretation. DBSCAN clustering. Interface functions for many clustering methods implemented in R, including estimating the number of clusters with kmeans, pam and clara. Modality diagnosis for Gaussian mixtures. For an overview see `package?fpc`.

**License** GPL

**URL** <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**NeedsCompilation** no

**Author** Christian Hennig [aut, cre]

**Maintainer** Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)>

**Repository** CRAN

**Date/Publication** 2024-09-24 05:50:02 UTC

## Contents

fpc-package	4
adcoord	6
ancoord	8
awcoord	9
batcoord	11
bhattacharyya.dist	13
bhattacharyya.matrix	14
calinhara	15
can	16
cat2bin	17
cdbw	18
cgrestandard	19
classifdist	21
clucols	23
clujaccard	24
clusexpect	25
clustatsum	26
cluster.magazine	29
cluster.stats	31
cluster.varstats	35
clusterbenchstats	37
clusterboot	41
cmahal	47
con.comp	48
confusion	49
cov.wml	50
cqcluster.stats	51
cvnn	58
cweight	59
dbscan	60
dipp.tantrum	62
diptest.multi	63
discrecoord	64
discrete.recode	65
discrproj	67
distancefactor	69
distrimulti	70
distrsimilarity	72
dridgeline	73
dudahart2	74
extract.mixturepars	75
findrep	76
fixmahal	77
fixreg	84
flexmixedruns	90
fpclusters	92

itnumber . . . . .	93
jittervar . . . . .	94
kmeansCBI . . . . .	95
kmeansruns . . . . .	100
lcmixed . . . . .	102
localshape . . . . .	104
mahalanodisc . . . . .	105
mahalanofix . . . . .	106
mahalconf . . . . .	107
mergenormals . . . . .	108
mergeparameters . . . . .	112
minsize . . . . .	113
mixdens . . . . .	114
mixpredictive . . . . .	115
mvdcoord . . . . .	116
ncoord . . . . .	117
neginc . . . . .	119
nselectboot . . . . .	120
pamk . . . . .	122
piridge . . . . .	124
piridge.zeroes . . . . .	125
plot.valstat . . . . .	126
plotcluster . . . . .	129
prediction.strength . . . . .	131
randcmatrix . . . . .	133
randconf . . . . .	134
randomclustersim . . . . .	135
regmix . . . . .	137
rFace . . . . .	140
ridgeline . . . . .	141
ridgeline.diagnosis . . . . .	142
simmatrix . . . . .	144
solvecov . . . . .	145
sseg . . . . .	146
stupidkaven . . . . .	147
stupidkcentroids . . . . .	148
stupidkfn . . . . .	149
stupidknn . . . . .	150
tdecomp . . . . .	151
tonedata . . . . .	152
unimodal.ind . . . . .	152
valstat.object . . . . .	153
weightplots . . . . .	155
wfu . . . . .	157
xtable . . . . .	158
zmisclassification.matrix . . . . .	159

## Description

Here is a list of the main functions in package `fpc`. Most other functions are auxiliary functions for these.

### Clustering methods

- dbscan** Computes DBSCAN density based clustering as introduced in Ester et al. (1996).
- fixmahal** Mahalanobis Fixed Point Clustering, Hennig and Christlieb (2002), Hennig (2005).
- fixreg** Regression Fixed Point Clustering, Hennig (2003).
- flexmixedruns** This fits a latent class model to data with mixed type continuous/nominal variables. Actually it calls a method for `flexmix`.
- mergenormals** Clustering by merging components of a Gaussian mixture, see Hennig (2010).
- regmix** ML-fit of a mixture of linear regression models, see DeSarbo and Cron (1988).

### Cluster validity indexes and estimation of the number of clusters

- cluster.stats** This computes several cluster validity statistics from a clustering and a dissimilarity matrix including the Calinski-Harabasz index, the adjusted Rand index and other statistics explained in Gordon (1999) as well as several characterising measures such as average between cluster and within cluster dissimilarity and separation. See also `calinhara`, `dudahart2` for specific indexes, and a new version `cqcluster.stats` that computes some more indexes and statistics used for computing them. There's also `distrsimilarity`, which computes within-cluster dissimilarity to the Gaussian and uniform distribution.
- prediction.strength** Estimates the number of clusters by computing the prediction strength of a clustering of a dataset into different numbers of components for various clustering methods, see Tibshirani and Walther (2005). In fact, this is more flexible than what is in the original paper, because it can use point classification schemes that work better with clustering methods other than k-means.
- nselectboot** Estimates the number of clusters by bootstrap stability selection, see Fang and Wang (2012). This is quite flexible regarding clustering methods and point classification schemes and also allows for dissimilarity data.
- clusterbenchstats** This runs many clustering methods (to be specified by the user) with many numbers of clusters on a dataset and produces standardised and comparable versions of many cluster validity indexes (see Hennig 2019, Akhanli and Hennig 2020). This is done by means of producing random clusterings on the given data, see `stupidkcentroids` and `stupidknn`. It allows to compare many clusterings based on many different potential desirable features of a clustering. `print.valstat` allows to compute an aggregated index with user-specified weights.

### Cluster visualisation and validation

- clucols** Sets of colours and symbols useful for cluster plotting.
- clusterboot** Cluster-wise stability assessment of a clustering. Clusterings are performed on resampled data to see for every cluster of the original dataset how well this is reproduced. See Hennig (2007) for details.
- cluster.varstats** Extracts variable-wise information for every cluster in order to help with cluster interpretation.
- plotcluster** Visualisation of a clustering or grouping in data by various linear projection methods that optimise the separation between clusters, or between a single cluster and the rest of the data according to Hennig (2004) including classical methods such as discriminant coordinates. This calls the function `discrproj`, which is a bit more flexible but doesn't produce a plot itself.
- ridgeline.diagnosis** Plots and diagnostics for assessing modality of Gaussian mixtures, see Ray and Lindsay (2005).
- weightplots** Plots to diagnose component separation in Gaussian mixtures, see Hennig (2010).
- localshape** Local shape matrix, can be used for finding clusters in connection with function `ics` in package `ICS`, see Hennig's discussion and rejoinder of Tyler et al. (2009).

### Useful wrapper functions for clustering methods

- kmeansCBI** This and other "CBI"-functions (see the `kmeansCBI-help` page) are unified wrappers for various clustering methods in R that may be useful because they do in one step for what you normally may need to do a bit more in R (for example fitting a Gaussian mixture with noise component in package `mclust`).
- kmeansruns** This calls `kmeans` for the k-means clustering method and includes estimation of the number of clusters and finding an optimal solution from several starting points.
- pamk** This calls `pam` and `clara` for the partitioning around medoids clustering method (Kaufman and Rousseeuw, 1990) and includes two different ways of estimating the number of clusters.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### References

- Akhanli, S. and Hennig, C. (2020) Calibrating and aggregating cluster validity indexes for context-adapted comparison of clusterings. *Statistics and Computing*, 30, 1523-1544, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11222-020-09958-2>, <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.01822>
- DeSarbo, W. S. and Cron, W. L. (1988) A maximum likelihood methodology for clusterwise linear regression, *Journal of Classification* 5, 249-282.
- Ester, M., Kriegel, H.-P., Sander, J. and Xu, X. (1996). A Density-Based Algorithm for Discovering Clusters in Large Spatial Databases with Noise. *Proceedings of 2nd International Conference on Knowledge Discovery and Data Mining (KDD-96)*.
- Fang, Y. and Wang, J. (2012) Selection of the number of clusters via the bootstrap method. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 56, 468-477.

- Gordon, A. D. (1999) *Classification*, 2nd ed. Chapman and Hall.
- Hennig, C. (2003) Clusters, outliers and regression: fixed point clusters, *Journal of Multivariate Analysis* 86, 183-212.
- Hennig, C. (2004) Asymmetric linear dimension reduction for classification. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, 13, 930-945 .
- Hennig, C. (2005) Fuzzy and Crisp Mahalanobis Fixed Point Clusters, in Baier, D., Decker, R., and Schmidt-Thieme, L. (eds.): *Data Analysis and Decision Support*. Springer, Heidelberg, 47-56.
- Hennig, C. (2007) Cluster-wise assessment of cluster stability. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 52, 258-271.
- Hennig, C. (2010) Methods for merging Gaussian mixture components, *Advances in Data Analysis and Classification*, 4, 3-34.
- Hennig, C. (2019) Cluster validation by measurement of clustering characteristics relevant to the user. In C. H. Skiadas (ed.) *Data Analysis and Applications 1: Clustering and Regression, Modeling-estimating, Forecasting and Data Mining, Volume 2*, Wiley, New York 1-24, <https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.09282>
- Hennig, C. and Christlieb, N. (2002) Validating visual clusters in large datasets: Fixed point clusters of spectral features, *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis* 40, 723-739.
- Kaufman, L. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1990). "Finding Groups in Data: An Introduction to Cluster Analysis". Wiley, New York.
- Ray, S. and Lindsay, B. G. (2005) The Topography of Multivariate Normal Mixtures, *Annals of Statistics*, 33, 2042-2065.
- Tibshirani, R. and Walther, G. (2005) Cluster Validation by Prediction Strength, *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, 14, 511-528.

---

adcoord

*Asymmetric discriminant coordinates*


---

## Description

Asymmetric discriminant coordinates as defined in Hennig (2003). Asymmetric discriminant projection means that there are two classes, one of which is treated as the homogeneous class (i.e., it should appear homogeneous and separated in the resulting projection) while the other may be heterogeneous. The principle is to maximize the ratio between the projection of a between classes separation matrix and the projection of the covariance matrix within the homogeneous class.

## Usage

```
adcoord(xd, clvecd, clnum=1)
```

## Arguments

xd	the data matrix; a numerical object which can be coerced to a matrix.
clvecd	integer vector of class numbers; length must equal nrow(xd).
clnum	integer. Number of the homogeneous class.

## Details

The square root of the homogeneous classes covariance matrix is inverted by use of `tdecomp`, which can be expected to give reasonable results for singular within-class covariance matrices.

## Value

List with the following components

<code>ev</code>	eigenvalues in descending order.
<code>units</code>	columns are coordinates of projection basis vectors. New points <code>x</code> can be projected onto the projection basis vectors by <code>x %*% units</code>
<code>proj</code>	projections of <code>xd</code> onto <code>units</code> .

## Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

## References

Hennig, C. (2004) Asymmetric linear dimension reduction for classification. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics* 13, 930-945 .

Hennig, C. (2005) A method for visual cluster validation. In: Weihs, C. and Gaul, W. (eds.): *Classification - The Ubiquitous Challenge*. Springer, Heidelberg 2005, 153-160.

## See Also

[plotcluster](#) for straight forward discriminant plots. [discrproj](#) for alternatives. [rFace](#) for generation of the example data used below.

## Examples

```
set.seed(4634)
face <- rFace(600,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0)
grface <- as.integer(attr(face,"grouping"))
adcf <- adcoord(face,grface==2)
adcf2 <- adcoord(face,grface==4)
plot(adcf$proj,col=1+(grface==2))
plot(adcf2$proj,col=1+(grface==4))
# ...done in one step by function plotcluster.
```

ancoord

*Asymmetric neighborhood based discriminant coordinates***Description**

Asymmetric neighborhood based discriminant coordinates as defined in Hennig (2003). Asymmetric discriminant projection means that there are two classes, one of which is treated as the homogeneous class (i.e., it should appear homogeneous and separated in the resulting projection) while the other may be heterogeneous. The principle is to maximize the ratio between the projection of a between classes covariance matrix, which is defined by averaging the between classes covariance matrices in the neighborhoods of the points of the homogeneous class and the projection of the covariance matrix within the homogeneous class.

**Usage**

```
ancoord(xd, clvecd, clnum=1, nn=50, method="mcd", countmode=1000, ...)
```

**Arguments**

xd	the data matrix; a numerical object which can be coerced to a matrix.
clvecd	integer vector of class numbers; length must equal nrow(xd).
clnum	integer. Number of the homogeneous class.
nn	integer. Number of points which belong to the neighborhood of each point (including the point itself).
method	one of "mve", "mcd" or "classical". Covariance matrix used within the homogeneous class. "mcd" and "mve" are robust covariance matrices as implemented in <a href="#">cov.rob</a> . "classical" refers to the classical covariance matrix.
countmode	optional positive integer. Every countmode algorithm runs ancoord shows a message.
...	no effect

**Details**

The square root of the homogeneous classes covariance matrix is inverted by use of [tdecomp](#), which can be expected to give reasonable results for singular within-class covariance matrices.

**Value**

List with the following components

ev	eigenvalues in descending order.
units	columns are coordinates of projection basis vectors. New points x can be projected onto the projection basis vectors by <code>x %*% units</code>
proj	projections of xd onto units.



**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Hennig, C. (2004) Asymmetric linear dimension reduction for classification. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics* 13, 930-945 .

Hennig, C. (2005) A method for visual cluster validation. In: Weihs, C. and Gaul, W. (eds.): *Classification - The Ubiquitous Challenge*. Springer, Heidelberg 2005, 153-160.

**See Also**

[plotcluster](#) for straight forward discriminant plots. [discrproj](#) for alternatives. [rFace](#) for generation of the example data used below.

**Examples**

```
set.seed(4634)
face <- rFace(600,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0)
grface <- as.integer(attr(face,"grouping"))
ancf2 <- ancoord(face,grface==4)
plot(ancf2$proj,col=1+(grface==4))
# ...done in one step by function plotcluster.
```

---

awcoord

*Asymmetric weighted discriminant coordinates*

---

**Description**

Asymmetric weighted discriminant coordinates as defined in Hennig (2003). Asymmetric discriminant projection means that there are two classes, one of which is treated as the homogeneous class (i.e., it should appear homogeneous and separated in the resulting projection) while the other may be heterogeneous. The principle is to maximize the ratio between the projection of a between classes separation matrix and the projection of the covariance matrix within the homogeneous class. Points are weighted according to their (robust) Mahalanobis distance to the homogeneous class.

**Usage**

```
awcoord(xd, clvecd, clnum=1, mahal="square", method="classical",
        clweight=switch(method,classical=FALSE,TRUE),
        alpha=0.99, subsample=0, countmode=1000, ...)
```

**Arguments**

<code>xd</code>	the data matrix; a numerical object which can be coerced to a matrix.
<code>clvecd</code>	integer vector of class numbers; length must equal <code>nrow(xd)</code> .
<code>clnum</code>	integer. Number of the homogeneous class.
<code>mahal</code>	"md" or "square". If "md", the points are weighted by the square root of the alpha-quantile of the corresponding chi squared distribution over the roots of their Mahalanobis distance to the homogeneous class, unless this is smaller than 1. If "square" (which is recommended), the (originally squared) Mahalanobis distance and the unrooted quantile is used.
<code>method</code>	one of "mve", "mcd" or "classical". Covariance matrix used within the homogeneous class and for the computation of the Mahalanobis distances. "mcd" and "mve" are robust covariance matrices as implemented in <code>cov.rob</code> . "classical" refers to the classical covariance matrix.
<code>clweight</code>	logical. If FALSE, only the points of the heterogeneous class are weighted. This, together with <code>method="classical"</code> , computes AWC as defined in Hennig (2003). If TRUE, all points are weighted. This, together with <code>method="mcd"</code> , computes ARC as defined in Hennig (2003).
<code>alpha</code>	numeric between 0 and 1. The corresponding quantile of the chi squared distribution is used for the downweighting of points. Points with a smaller Mahalanobis distance to the homogeneous class get full weight.
<code>subsample</code>	integer. If 0, all points are used. Else, only a subsample of subsample of the points is used.
<code>countmode</code>	optional positive integer. Every countmode algorithm runs <code>awcoord</code> shows a message.
<code>...</code>	no effect

**Details**

The square root of the homogeneous classes covariance matrix is inverted by use of `tdecomp`, which can be expected to give reasonable results for singular within-class covariance matrices.

**Value**

List with the following components

<code>ev</code>	eigenvalues in descending order.
<code>units</code>	columns are coordinates of projection basis vectors. New points <code>x</code> can be projected onto the projection basis vectors by <code>x %*% units</code>
<code>proj</code>	projections of <code>xd</code> onto <code>units</code> .

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

## References

Hennig, C. (2004) Asymmetric linear dimension reduction for classification. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics* 13, 930-945 .

Hennig, C. (2005) A method for visual cluster validation. In: Weihs, C. and Gaul, W. (eds.): *Classification - The Ubiquitous Challenge*. Springer, Heidelberg 2005, 153-160.

## See Also

[plotcluster](#) for straight forward discriminant plots. [discrproj](#) for alternatives. [rFace](#) for generation of the example data used below.

## Examples

```
set.seed(4634)
face <- rFace(600,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0)
grface <- as.integer(attr(face,"grouping"))
awcf <- awcoord(face,grface==1)
# awcf2 <- ancoord(face,grface==1, method="mcd")
plot(awcf$proj,col=1+(grface==1))
# plot(awcf2$proj,col=1+(grface==1))
# ...done in one step by function plotcluster.
```

---

batcoord

*Bhattacharyya discriminant projection*


---

## Description

Computes Bhattacharyya discriminant projection coordinates as described in Fukunaga (1990), p. 455 ff.

## Usage

```
batcoord(xd, clvecd, clnum=1, dom="mean")
batvarcoord(xd, clvecd, clnum=1)
```

## Arguments

xd	the data matrix; a numerical object which can be coerced to a matrix.
clvecd	integer or logical vector of class numbers; length must equal nrow(xd).
clnum	integer, one of the values of clvecd, if this is an integer vector. Bhattacharyya projections can only be computed if there are only two classes in the dataset. clnum is the number of one of the two classes. All the points indicated by other values of clvecd are interpreted as the second class.

dom string. dom="mean" means that the discriminant coordinate for the group means is computed as the first projection direction by `discrcoord` (option pool="equal"; both classes have the same weight for computing the within-class covariance matrix). Then the data is projected into a subspace orthogonal (w.r.t. the within-class covariance) to the discriminant coordinate, and the projection coordinates to maximize the differences in variance are computed. dom="variance" means that the projection coordinates maximizing the difference in variances are computed. Then they are ordered with respect to the Bhattacharyya distance, which takes also the mean differences into account. Both procedures are implemented as described in Fukunaga (1990).

### Details

batvarcoord computes the optimal projection coordinates with respect to the difference in variances. batcoord combines the differences in mean and variance as explained for the argument dom.

### Value

batcoord returns a list with the components ev, rev, units, proj. batvarcoord returns a list with the components ev, rev, units, proj, W, S1, S2.

ev vector of eigenvalues. If dom="mean", then first eigenvalue from `discrcoord`. Further eigenvalues are of  $S_1^{-1}S_2$ , where  $S_i$  is the covariance matrix of class  $i$ . For batvarcoord or if dom="variance", all eigenvalues come from  $S_1^{-1}S_2$  and are ordered by rev.

rev for batcoord: vector of projected Bhattacharyya distances (Fukunaga (1990), p. 99). Determine quality of the projection coordinates. For batvarcoord: vector of amount of projected difference in variances.

units columns are coordinates of projection basis vectors. New points  $x$  can be projected onto the projection basis vectors by  $x \%*\% \text{units}$ .

proj projections of  $xd$  onto units.

W matrix  $S_1^{-1}S_2$ .

S1 covariance matrix of the first class.

S2 covariance matrix of the second class.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### References

Fukunaga, K. (1990). *Introduction to Statistical Pattern Recognition* (2nd ed.). Boston: Academic Press.

**See Also**

[plotcluster](#) for straight forward discriminant plots.  
[discrcoord](#) for discriminant coordinates.  
[rFace](#) for generation of the example data used below.

**Examples**

```
set.seed(4634)
face <- rFace(600,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0)
grface <- as.integer(attr(face,"grouping"))
bcf2 <- batcoord(face,grface==2)
plot(bcf2$proj,col=1+(grface==2))
bcfv2 <- batcoord(face,grface==2,dm="variance")
plot(bcfv2$proj,col=1+(grface==2))
bcfvv2 <- batvarcoord(face,grface==2)
plot(bcfvv2$proj,col=1+(grface==2))
```

---

bhattacharyya.dist      *Bhattacharyya distance between Gaussian distributions*

---

**Description**

Computes Bhattacharyya distance between two multivariate Gaussian distributions. See Fukunaga (1990).

**Usage**

```
bhattacharyya.dist(mu1, mu2, Sigma1, Sigma2)
```

**Arguments**

mu1	mean vector of component 1.
mu2	mean vector of component 2.
Sigma1	covariance matrix of component 1.
Sigma2	covariance matrix of component 2.

**Value**

The Bhattacharyya distance between the two Gaussian distributions.

**Note**

Thanks to David Pinto for improving this function.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

## References

- Fukunaga, K. (1990) *Introduction to Statistical Pattern Recognition*, 2nd edition, Academic Press, New York.
- Hennig, C. (2010) Methods for merging Gaussian mixture components, *Advances in Data Analysis and Classification*, 4, 3-34.

## Examples

```
round(bhattacharyya.dist(c(1,1),c(2,5),diag(2),diag(2)),digits=2)
```

---

bhattacharyya.matrix *Matrix of pairwise Bhattacharyya distances*

---

## Description

Computes Bhattacharyya distances for pairs of components given the parameters of a Gaussian mixture.

## Usage

```
bhattacharyya.matrix(muarray,Sigmaarray,ipairs="all",
                     misclassification.bound=TRUE)
```

## Arguments

muarray	matrix of component means (different components are in different columns).
Sigmaarray	three dimensional array with component covariance matrices (the third dimension refers to components).
ipairs	"all" or list of vectors of two integers. If ipairs="all", computations are carried out for all pairs of components. Otherwise, ipairs gives the pairs of components for which computations are carried out.
misclassification.bound	logical. If TRUE, upper bounds for misclassification probabilities $\exp(-b)$ are given out instead of the original Bhattacharyya distances $b$ .

## Value

A matrix with Bhattacharyya distances (or derived misclassification bounds, see above) between pairs of Gaussian distributions with the provided parameters. If ipairs!="all", the Bhattacharyya distance and the misclassification bound are given as NA for pairs not included in ipairs.

## Author(s)

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

- Fukunaga, K. (1990) *Introduction to Statistical Pattern Recognition*, 2nd edition, Academic Press, New York.
- Hennig, C. (2010) Methods for merging Gaussian mixture components, *Advances in Data Analysis and Classification*, 4, 3-34.

**See Also**

[bhattacharyya.dist](#)

**Examples**

```
muarray <- cbind(c(0,0),c(0,0.1),c(10,10))
sigmaarray <- array(c(diag(2),diag(2),diag(2)),dim=c(2,2,3))
bhattacharyya.matrix(muarray,sigmaarray,ipairs=list(c(1,2),c(2,3)))
```

---

calinhara

*Calinski-Harabasz index*

---

**Description**

Calinski-Harabasz index for estimating the number of clusters, based on an observations/variables-matrix here. A distance based version is available through `cluster.stats`.

**Usage**

```
calinhara(x,clustering,cn=max(clustering))
```

**Arguments**

x	data matrix or data frame.
clustering	vector of integers. Clustering.
cn	integer. Number of clusters.

**Value**

Calinski-Harabasz statistic, which is  $(n-cn)*\text{sum}(\text{diag}(B))/((cn-1)*\text{sum}(\text{diag}(W)))$ . B being the between-cluster means, and W being the within-clusters covariance matrix.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en>

## References

Calinski, T., and Harabasz, J. (1974) A Dendrite Method for Cluster Analysis, *Communications in Statistics*, 3, 1-27.

## See Also

[cluster.stats](#)

## Examples

```
set.seed(98765)
iriss <- iris[sample(150,20),-5]
km <- kmeans(iriss,3)
round(calinhara(iriss,km$cluster),digits=2)
```

---

can

*Generation of the tuning constant for regression fixed point clusters*

---

## Description

Generates tuning constants `ca` for `fixreg` dependent on the number of points and variables of the dataset.

Only thought for use in `fixreg`.

## Usage

```
can(n, p)
```

## Arguments

`n` positive integer. Number of points.  
`p` positive integer. Number of independent variables.

## Details

The formula is  $3 + 33/(n * 2^{-(p-1)/2})^{1/3} + 2900000/(n * 2^{-(p-1)/2})^3$ . For justification cf. Hennig (2002).

## Value

A number.

## Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>



**References**

Hennig, C. (2002) Fixed point clusters for linear regression: computation and comparison, *Journal of Classification* 19, 249-276.

**See Also**

[fixreg](#)

**Examples**

```
can(429,3)
```

---

cat2bin

*Recode nominal variables to binary variables*

---

**Description**

Recodes a dataset with nominal variables so that the nominal variables are replaced by binary variables for the categories.

**Usage**

```
cat2bin(x,categorical=NULL)
```

**Arguments**

x	data matrix or data frame. The data need to be organised case-wise, i.e., if there are categorical variables only, and 15 cases with values c(1,1,2) on the 3 variables, the data matrix needs 15 rows with values 1 1 2. (Categorical variables could take numbers or strings or anything that can be coerced to factor levels as values.)
categorical	vector of numbers of variables to be recoded.

**Value**

A list with components

data	data matrix with variables specified in <code>categorical</code> replaced by 0-1 variables, one for each category.
variableinfo	list of lists. One list for every variable in the original dataset, with four components each, namely <code>type</code> ("categorical" or "not recoded"), <code>levels</code> (levels of nominal recoded variables in order of binary variable in output dataset), <code>ncat</code> (number of categories for recoded variables), <code>varnum</code> (number of variables in output dataset belonging to this original variable).

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en>

**See Also**

[discrete.recode](#)

**Examples**

```
set.seed(776655)
v1 <- rnorm(20)
v2 <- rnorm(20)
d1 <- sample(1:5,20,replace=TRUE)
d2 <- sample(1:4,20,replace=TRUE)
ldata <- cbind(v1,v2,d1,d2)
lc <- cat2bin(ldata,categorical=3:4)
```

---

cdbw

*CDbw-index for cluster validation*

---

**Description**

CDbw-index for cluster validation, as defined in Halkidi and Vazirgiannis (2008), Halkidi et al. (2015).

**Usage**

```
cdbw(x,clustering,r=10,s=seq(0.1,0.8,by=0.1),
      clusterstdev=TRUE,trace=FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

x	something that can be coerced into a numerical matrix. Euclidean dataset.
clustering	vector of integers with length =nrow(x); indicating the cluster for each observation.
r	integer. Number of cluster border representatives.
s	numerical vector of shrinking factors (between 0 and 1).
clusterstdev	logical. If TRUE, the neighborhood radius for intra-cluster density is the within-cluster estimated squared distance from the mean of the cluster; otherwise it is the average of these over all clusters.
trace	logical. If TRUE, results are printed for the steps to compute the index.

**Value**

List with components (see Halkidi and Vazirgiannis (2008), Halkidi et al. (2015) for details)

cdbw	value of CDbw index (the higher the better).
cohesion	cohesion.
compactness	compactness.
sep	separation.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Halkidi, M. and Vazirgiannis, M. (2008) A density-based cluster validity approach using multi-representatives. *Pattern Recognition Letters* 29, 773-786.

Halkidi, M., Vazirgiannis, M. and Hennig, C. (2015) Method-independent indices for cluster validation. In C. Hennig, M. Meila, F. Murtagh, R. Rocci (eds.) *Handbook of Cluster Analysis*, CRC Press/Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton.

**Examples**

```
options(digits=3)
iriss <- as.matrix(iris[c(1:5,51:55,101:105),-5])
irisc <- as.numeric(iris[c(1:5,51:55,101:105),5])
cdbw(iriss,irisc)
```

---

cgrestandard

*Standardise cluster validation statistics by random clustering results*

---

**Description**

Standardises cluster validity statistics as produced by `clustatsum` relative to results that were achieved by random clusterings on the same data by `randomclustersim`. The aim is to make differences between values comparable between indexes, see Hennig (2019), Akhanli and Hennig (2020).

This is mainly for use within `clusterbenchstats`.

**Usage**

```
cgrestandard(clusum,clusim,G,percentage=FALSE,
             useallmethods=FALSE,
             useallg=FALSE, othernc=list())
```

## Arguments

clusum	object of class "valstat", see <a href="#">clusterbenchstats</a> .
clusim	list; output object of <a href="#">randomclustersim</a> , see there.
G	vector of integers. Numbers of clusters to consider.
percentage	logical. If FALSE, standardisation is done to mean zero and standard deviation 1 using the random clusterings. If TRUE, the output is the percentage of simulated values below the result (more precisely, this number plus one divided by the total plus one).
useallmethods	logical. If FALSE, only random clustering results from <code>clusim</code> are used for standardisation. If TRUE, also clustering results from other methods as given in <code>clusum</code> are used.
useallg	logical. If TRUE, standardisation uses results from all numbers of clusters in <code>G</code> . If FALSE, standardisation of results for a specific number of cluster only uses results from that number of clusters.
othernc	list of integer vectors of length 2. This allows the incorporation of methods that bring forth other numbers of clusters than those in <code>G</code> , for example because a method may have automatically estimated a number of clusters. The first number is the number of the clustering method (the order is determined by argument <code>clustermethod</code> in <a href="#">clusterbenchstats</a> ), the second number is the number of clusters. Results specified here are only standardised in <code>useallg=TRUE</code> .

## Details

cgrestandard will add a statistic named `dmode` to the input set of validation statistics, which is defined as  $0.75*dindex+0.25*highdgap$ , aggregating these two closely related statistics, see [clustatsum](#).

## Value

List of class "valstat", see [valstat.object](#), with standardised results as explained above.

## Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

## References

- Hennig, C. (2019) Cluster validation by measurement of clustering characteristics relevant to the user. In C. H. Skiadas (ed.) *Data Analysis and Applications 1: Clustering and Regression, Modeling-estimating, Forecasting and Data Mining, Volume 2*, Wiley, New York 1-24, <https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.09282>
- Akhanli, S. and Hennig, C. (2020) Calibrating and aggregating cluster validity indexes for context-adapted comparison of clusterings. *Statistics and Computing*, 30, 1523-1544, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11222-020-09958-2>, <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.01822>

**See Also**

[valstat.object](#), [clusterbenchstats](#), [stupidkcentroids](#), [stupidknn](#), [stupidkfn](#), [stupidkaven](#), [clustatsum](#)

**Examples**

```

set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(10, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
dif <- dist(face)
clusum <- list()
clusum[[2]] <- list()
cl12 <- kmeansCBI(face,2)
cl13 <- kmeansCBI(face,3)
cl22 <- claraCBI(face,2)
cl23 <- claraCBI(face,2)
ccl12 <- clustatsum(dif,cl12$partition)
ccl13 <- clustatsum(dif,cl13$partition)
ccl22 <- clustatsum(dif,cl22$partition)
ccl23 <- clustatsum(dif,cl23$partition)
clusum[[1]] <- list()
clusum[[1]][[2]] <- ccl12
clusum[[1]][[3]] <- ccl13
clusum[[2]][[2]] <- ccl22
clusum[[2]][[3]] <- ccl23
clusum$maxG <- 3
clusum$minG <- 2
clusum$method <- c("kmeansCBI", "claraCBI")
clusum$name <- c("kmeansCBI", "claraCBI")
clusim <- randomclustersim(dist(face), G=2:3, nnruns=1, kmruns=1,
  fnruns=1, avenruns=1, monitor=FALSE)
cgr <- cgrestandard(clusum, clusim, 2:3)
cgr2 <- cgrestandard(clusum, clusim, 2:3, useallg=TRUE)
cgr3 <- cgrestandard(clusum, clusim, 2:3, percentage=TRUE)
print(str(cgr))
print(str(cgr2))
print(cgr3[[1]][[2]])

```

---

classifdist

*Classification of unclustered points*


---

**Description**

Various methods for classification of unclustered points from clustered points for use within functions `nselectboot` and `prediction.strength`.

**Usage**

```
classifdist(cdist,clustering,
            method="averagedist",
            centroids=NULL,nnk=1)

classifnp(data,clustering,
           method="centroid",cdist=NULL,
           centroids=NULL,nnk=1)
```

**Arguments**

<code>cdist</code>	dissimilarity matrix or dist-object. Necessary for <code>classifdist</code> but optional for <code>classifnp</code> and there only used if <code>method="averagedist"</code> (if not provided, <code>dist</code> is applied to <code>data</code> ).
<code>data</code>	something that can be coerced into a an <code>n*p</code> -data matrix.
<code>clustering</code>	integer vector. Gives the cluster number (between 1 and <code>k</code> for <code>k</code> clusters) for clustered points and should be -1 for points to be classified.
<code>method</code>	one of "averagedist", "centroid", "qda", "knn". See details.
<code>centroids</code>	for <code>classifnp</code> a <code>k</code> times <code>p</code> matrix of cluster centroids. For <code>classifdist</code> a vector of numbers of centroid objects as provided by <a href="#">pam</a> . Only used if <code>method="centroid"</code> ; in that case mandatory for <code>classifdist</code> but optional for <code>classifnp</code> , where cluster mean vectors are computed if <code>centroids=NULL</code> .
<code>nnk</code>	number of nearest neighbours if <code>method="knn"</code> .

**Details**

`classifdist` is for data given as dissimilarity matrix, `classifnp` is for data given as `n` times `p` data matrix. The following methods are supported:

**"centroid"** assigns observations to the cluster with closest cluster centroid as specified in argument `centroids` (this is associated to `k`-means and `pam/clara`-clustering).

**"qda"** only in `classifnp`. Classifies by quadratic discriminant analysis (this is associated to Gaussian clusters with flexible covariance matrices), calling [qda](#) with default settings. If [qda](#) gives an error (usually because a class was too small), [lda](#) is used.

**"lda"** only in `classifnp`. Classifies by linear discriminant analysis (this is associated to Gaussian clusters with equal covariance matrices), calling [lda](#) with default settings.

**"averagedist"** assigns to the cluster to which an observation has the minimum average dissimilarity to all points in the cluster (this is associated with average linkage clustering).

**"knn"** classifies by `nnk` nearest neighbours (for `nnk=1`, this is associated with single linkage clustering). Calls [knn](#) in `classifnp`.

**"fn"** classifies by the minimum distance to the farthest neighbour. This is associated with complete linkage clustering).

**Value**

An integer vector giving cluster numbers for all observations; those for the observations already clustered in the input are the same as in the input.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**See Also**

[prediction.strength](#), [nselectboot](#)

**Examples**

```
set.seed(20000)
x1 <- rnorm(50)
y <- rnorm(100)
x2 <- rnorm(40,mean=20)
x3 <- rnorm(10,mean=25,sd=100)
x <- cbind(c(x1,x2,x3),y)
truec <- c(rep(1,50),rep(2,40),rep(3,10))
topredict <- c(1,2,51,52,91)
clumin <- truec
clumin[topredict] <- -1

classifnp(x,clumin, method="averagedist")
classifnp(x,clumin, method="qda")
classifdist(dist(x),clumin, centroids=c(3,53,93),method="centroid")
classifdist(dist(x),clumin,method="knn")
```

---

clucols

*Sets of colours and symbols for cluster plotting*

---

**Description**

clucols gives out a vector of different random colours. clugrey gives out a vector of equidistant grey scales. clusym is a vector of different symbols starting from "1", "2",...

**Usage**

```
clucols(i, seed=NULL)
clugrey(i,max=0.9)
clusym
```

**Arguments**

i	integer. Length of output vector (number of clusters).
seed	integer. Random seed.
max	between 0 and 1. Maximum grey scale value, see <a href="#">grey</a> (close to 1 is bright).

**Value**

clucols gives out a vector of different random colours. clugrey gives out a vector of equidistant grey scales. clusym is a vector of different characters starting from "1", "2",...

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en>

**Examples**

```
set.seed(112233)
require(MASS)
require(flexmix)
data(Cars93)
Cars934 <- Cars93[,c(3,5,8,10)]
cc <-
  discrete.recode(Cars934,xvarsorted=FALSE,continuous=c(2,3),discrete=c(1,4))
fcc <- flexmix(cc$data~1,k=3,
model=lcmixed(continuous=2,discrete=2,ppdim=c(6,3),diagonal=TRUE))
plot(Cars934[,c(2,3)],col=clucols(3)[fcc@cluster],pch=clusym[fcc@cluster])
```

---

clujaccard

*Jaccard similarity between logical vectors*

---

**Description**

Jaccard similarity between logical or 0-1 vectors:  $\text{sum}(c1 \& c2) / \text{sum}(c1 \mid c2)$ .

**Usage**

```
clujaccard(c1, c2, zerobyzero=NA)
```

**Arguments**

c1	logical or 0-1-vector.
c2	logical or 0-1-vector (same length).
zerobyzero	result if $\text{sum}(c1 \mid c2)=0$ .

**Value**

Numeric between 0 and 1.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>



**Examples**

```
c1 <- rep(TRUE,10)
c2 <- c(FALSE,rep(TRUE,9))
cluJaccard(c1,c2)
```

---

clusexpect

*Expected value of the number of times a fixed point cluster is found*

---

**Description**

A rough approximation of the expectation of the number of times a well separated fixed point cluster (FPC) of size  $n$  is found in  $ir$  fixed point iterations of [fixreg](#).

**Usage**

```
clusexpect(n, p, cn, ir)
```

**Arguments**

<code>n</code>	positive integer. Total number of points.
<code>p</code>	positive integer. Number of independent variables.
<code>cn</code>	positive integer smaller or equal to $n$ . Size of the FPC.
<code>ir</code>	positive integer. Number of fixed point iterations.

**Details**

The approximation is based on the assumption that a well separated FPC is found iff all  $p+2$  points of the initial configuration come from the FPC. The value is  $ir$  times the probability for this. For a discussion of this assumption cf. Hennig (2002).

**Value**

A number.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Hennig, C. (2002) Fixed point clusters for linear regression: computation and comparison, *Journal of Classification* 19, 249-276.

**See Also**

[fixreg](#)

**Examples**

```
round(clusexpect(500,4,150,2000),digits=2)
```

---

clustatsum	<i>Compute and format cluster validation statistics</i>
------------	---

---

**Description**

clustatsum computes cluster validation statistics by running `cqcluster.stats`, and potentially `distrsimilarity`, and collecting some key statistics values with a somewhat different nomenclature.

This was implemented as a helper function for use inside of `clusterbenchstats` and `cgrestandard`.

**Usage**

```
clustatsum(datadist=NULL,clustering,noisecluster=FALSE,
           datanp=NULL,npstats=FALSE,useboot=FALSE,
           bootclassif=NULL,
           bootmethod="nselectboot",
           bootruns=25,cbmethod=NULL,methodpars=NULL,
           distmethod=NULL,dnkn=2,
           pamcrit=TRUE,...)
```

**Arguments**

datadist	distances on which validation-measures are based, dist object or distance matrix. If NULL, this is computed from datanp; at least one of datadist and datanp must be specified.
clustering	an integer vector of length of the number of cases, which indicates a clustering. The clusters have to be numbered from 1 to the number of clusters.
noisecluster	logical. If TRUE, it is assumed that the largest cluster number in clustering denotes a 'noise class', i.e. points that do not belong to any cluster. These points are not taken into account for the computation of all functions of within and between cluster distances including the validation indexes.
datanp	optional observations times variables data matrix, see npstats.
npstats	logical. If TRUE, <code>distrsimilarity</code> is called and the two statistics computed there are added to the output. These are based on datanp and require datanp to be specified.
useboot	logical. If TRUE, a stability index (either <code>nselectboot</code> or <code>prediction.strength</code> ) will be involved.
bootclassif	If useboot=TRUE, a string indicating the classification method to be used with the stability index, see the <code>classification</code> argument of <code>nselectboot</code> and <code>prediction.strength</code> .

bootmethod	either "nselectboot" or "prediction.strength"; stability index to be used if useboot=TRUE.
bootruns	integer. Number of resampling runs. If useboot=TRUE, passed on as B to <a href="#">nselectboot</a> or M to <a href="#">prediction.strength</a> .
cbmethod	CBI-function (see <a href="#">kmeansCBI</a> ); clustering method to be used for stability assessment if useboot=TRUE.
methodpars	parameters to be passed on to cbmethod.
distmethod	logical. In case of useboot=TRUE indicates whether cbmethod will interpret data as distances.
dnnk	nkn-argument to be passed on to <a href="#">distrsimilarity</a> .
pamcrit	pamcrit-argument to be passed on to <a href="#">cqcluster.stats</a> .
...	further arguments to be passed on to <a href="#">cqcluster.stats</a> .

### Value

clustatsum returns a list. The components, as listed below, are outputs of [summary.cquality](#) with default parameters, which means that they are partly transformed versions of those given out by [cqcluster.stats](#), i.e., their range is between 0 and 1 and large values are good. Those from [distrsimilarity](#) are computed with `largeisgood=TRUE`, correspondingly.

avewithin	average distance within clusters (reweighted so that every observation, rather than every distance, has the same weight).
mnnd	average distance to nnkth nearest neighbour within cluster.
cvnnd	coefficient of variation of dissimilarities to nnkth nearest within-cluster neighbour, measuring uniformity of within-cluster densities, weighted over all clusters, see Sec. 3.7 of Hennig (2019).
maxdiameter	maximum cluster diameter.
widestgap	widest within-cluster gap or average of cluster-wise widest within-cluster gap, depending on parameter <code>averagegap</code> .
sindex	separation index, see argument <code>sepindex</code> .
minsep	minimum cluster separation.
asw	average silhouette width. See <a href="#">silhouette</a> .
dindex	this index measures to what extent the density decreases from the cluster mode to the outskirts; I-densdec in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019).
denscut	this index measures whether cluster boundaries run through density valleys; I-densbound in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019).
highdgap	this measures whether there is a large within-cluster gap with high density on both sides; I-highdgap in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019).
pearsongamma	correlation between distances and a 0-1-vector where 0 means same cluster, 1 means different clusters. "Normalized gamma" in Halkidi et al. (2001).
withinss	a generalisation of the within clusters sum of squares (k-means objective function), which is obtained if d is a Euclidean distance matrix. For general distance measures, this is half the sum of the within cluster squared dissimilarities divided by the cluster size.

entropy	entropy of the distribution of cluster memberships, see Meila(2007).
pamc	average distance to cluster centroid.
kdnorm	Kolmogorov distance between distribution of within-cluster Mahalanobis distances and appropriate chi-squared distribution, aggregated over clusters (I am grateful to Agustin Mayo-Iscar for the idea).
kdunif	Kolmogorov distance between distribution of distances to nnkth nearest within-cluster neighbor and appropriate Gamma-distribution, see Byers and Raftery (1998), aggregated over clusters.
boot	if useboot=TRUE, stability value; stakb for method <code>nselectboot</code> ; mean.pred for method <code>prediction.strength</code> .

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### References

- Akhanli, S. and Hennig, C. (2020) Calibrating and aggregating cluster validity indexes for context-adapted comparison of clusterings. *Statistics and Computing*, 30, 1523-1544, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11222-020-09958-2>, <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.01822>
- Halkidi, M., Batistakis, Y., Vazirgiannis, M. (2001) On Clustering Validation Techniques, *Journal of Intelligent Information Systems*, 17, 107-145.
- Hennig, C. (2019) Cluster validation by measurement of clustering characteristics relevant to the user. In C. H. Skiadas (ed.) *Data Analysis and Applications 1: Clustering and Regression, Modeling-estimating, Forecasting and Data Mining, Volume 2*, Wiley, New York 1-24, <https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.09282>
- Kaufman, L. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1990). "Finding Groups in Data: An Introduction to Cluster Analysis". Wiley, New York.
- Meila, M. (2007) Comparing clusterings?an information based distance, *Journal of Multivariate Analysis*, 98, 873-895.

### See Also

[cqcluster.stats](#), [distrsimilarity](#)

### Examples

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(20, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
dface <- dist(face)
complete3 <- cutree(hclust(dface), 3)
clustatsum(dface, complete3)
```

---

cluster.magazine      *Run many clustering methods on many numbers of clusters*

---

## Description

Runs a user-specified set of clustering methods (CBI-functions, see [kmeansCBI](#) with several numbers of clusters on a dataset with unified output.

## Usage

```
cluster.magazine(data,G,diss = inherits(data, "dist"),
                 scaling=TRUE, clustermethod,
                 distmethod=rep(TRUE,length(clustermethod)),
                 ncinput=rep(TRUE,length(clustermethod)),
                 clustermethodpars,
                 trace=TRUE)
```

## Arguments

data	data matrix or dist-object.
G	vector of integers. Numbers of clusters to consider.
diss	logical. If TRUE, the data matrix is assumed to be a distance/dissimilarity matrix, otherwise it's observations times variables.
scaling	either a logical or a numeric vector of length equal to the number of columns of data. If FALSE, data won't be scaled, otherwise scaling is passed on to <a href="#">scale</a> as argument <code>scale</code> .
clustermethod	vector of strings specifying names of CBI-functions (see <a href="#">kmeansCBI</a> ). These are the clustering methods to be applied.
distmethod	vector of logicals, of the same length as <code>clustermethod</code> . TRUE means that the clustering method operates on distances. If <code>diss=TRUE</code> , all entries have to be TRUE. Otherwise, if an entry is true, the corresponding method will be applied on <code>dist(data)</code> .
ncinput	vector of logicals, of the same length as <code>clustermethod</code> . TRUE indicates that the corresponding clustering method requires the number of clusters as input and will not estimate the number of clusters itself.
clustermethodpars	list of the same length as <code>clustermethod</code> . Specifies parameters for all involved clustering methods. Its <code>j</code> th entry is passed to <code>clustermethod</code> number <code>k</code> . Can be an empty entry in case all defaults are used for a clustering method. The number of clusters does not need to be specified here.
trace	logical. If TRUE, some runtime information is printed.

**Value**

List of lists comprising

output	Two-dimensional list. The first list index <i>i</i> is the number of the clustering method (ordering as specified in <code>clustermethod</code> ), the second list index <i>j</i> is the number of clusters. This stores the full output of <code>clustermethod i</code> run on number of clusters <i>j</i> .
clustering	Two-dimensional list. The first list index <i>i</i> is the number of the clustering method (ordering as specified in <code>clustermethod</code> ), the second list index <i>j</i> is the number of clusters. This stores the clustering integer vector (i.e., the partition-component of the CBI-function, see <code>kmeansCBI</code> ) of <code>clustermethod i</code> run on number of clusters <i>j</i> .
noise	Two-dimensional list. The first list index <i>i</i> is the number of the clustering method (ordering as specified in <code>clustermethod</code> ), the second list index <i>j</i> is the number of clusters. List entries are single logicals. If TRUE, the clustering method estimated some noise, i.e., points not belonging to any cluster, which in the clustering vector are indicated by the highest number (number of clusters plus one in case that the number of clusters was fixed).
othernc	list of integer vectors of length 2. The first number is the number of the clustering method (the order is determined by argument <code>clustermethod</code> ), the second number is the number of clusters for those methods that estimate the number of clusters themselves and estimate a number that is smaller than <code>min(G)</code> or larger than <code>max(G)</code> .

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Hennig, C. (2017) Cluster validation by measurement of clustering characteristics relevant to the user. In C. H. Skiadas (ed.) *Proceedings of ASMDA 2017*, 501-520, <https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.09282>

**See Also**

[clusterbenchstats](#), [kmeansCBI](#)

**Examples**

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(10, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
clustermethod=c("kmeansCBI", "hclustCBI", "hclustCBI")
# A clustering method can be used more than once, with different
# parameters
clustermethodpars <- list()
clustermethodpars[[2]] <- clustermethodpars[[3]] <- list()
```

```

clustermethodpars[[2]]$method <- "complete"
clustermethodpars[[3]]$method <- "average"
cmf <- cluster.magazine(face,G=2:3,clustermethod=clustermethod,
  distmethod=rep(FALSE,3),clustermethodpars=clustermethodpars)
print(str(cmf))

```

---

cluster.stats

---

*Cluster validation statistics*


---

### Description

Computes a number of distance based statistics, which can be used for cluster validation, comparison between clusterings and decision about the number of clusters: cluster sizes, cluster diameters, average distances within and between clusters, cluster separation, biggest within cluster gap, average silhouette widths, the Calinski and Harabasz index, a Pearson version of Hubert's gamma coefficient, the Dunn index and two indexes to assess the similarity of two clusterings, namely the corrected Rand index and Meila's VI.

### Usage

```

cluster.stats(d = NULL, clustering, alt.clustering = NULL,
             noisecluster=FALSE,
             silhouette = TRUE, G2 = FALSE, G3 = FALSE,
             wgap=TRUE, sepindex=TRUE, sepprob=0.1,
             sepwithnoise=TRUE,
             compareonly = FALSE,
             aggregateonly = FALSE)

```

### Arguments

d	a distance object (as generated by dist) or a distance matrix between cases.
clustering	an integer vector of length of the number of cases, which indicates a clustering. The clusters have to be numbered from 1 to the number of clusters.
alt.clustering	an integer vector such as for clustering, indicating an alternative clustering. If provided, the corrected Rand index and Meila's VI for clustering vs. alt.clustering are computed.
noisecluster	logical. If TRUE, it is assumed that the largest cluster number in clustering denotes a 'noise class', i.e. points that do not belong to any cluster. These points are not taken into account for the computation of all functions of within and between cluster distances including the validation indexes.
silhouette	logical. If TRUE, the silhouette statistics are computed, which requires package cluster.
G2	logical. If TRUE, Goodman and Kruskal's index G2 (cf. Gordon (1999), p. 62) is computed. This executes lots of sorting algorithms and can be very slow (it has been improved by R. Francois - thanks!)

G3	logical. If TRUE, the index G3 (cf. Gordon (1999), p. 62) is computed. This executes sort on all distances and can be extremely slow.
wgap	logical. If TRUE, the widest within-cluster gaps (largest link in within-cluster minimum spanning tree) are computed. This is used for finding a good number of clusters in Hennig (2013).
sepindex	logical. If TRUE, a separation index is computed, defined based on the distances for every point to the closest point not in the same cluster. The separation index is then the mean of the smallest proportion sepprob of these. This allows to formalise separation less sensitive to a single or a few ambiguous points. The output component corresponding to this is sindex, not separation! This is used for finding a good number of clusters in Hennig (2013).
sepprob	numerical between 0 and 1, see sepindex.
sepwithnoise	logical. If TRUE and sepindex and noisecluster are both TRUE, the noise points are incorporated as cluster in the separation index (sepindex) computation. Also they are taken into account for the computation for the minimum cluster separation.
compareonly	logical. If TRUE, only the corrected Rand index and Meila's VI are computed and given out (this requires alt.clustering to be specified).
aggregateonly	logical. If TRUE (and not compareonly), no clusterwise but only aggregated information is given out (this cuts the size of the output down a bit).

### Value

cluster.stats returns a list containing the components n, cluster.number, cluster.size, min.cluster.size, noisen, diameter, average.distance, median.distance, separation, average.toother, separation.matrix, average.between, average.within, n.between, n.within, within.cluster.ss, clus.avg.silwidths, avg.silwidth, g2, g3, pearsongamma, dunn, entropy, wb.ratio, ch, cwidegap, widestgap, sindex, corrected.rand, vi except if compareonly=TRUE, in which case only the last two components are computed.

n	number of cases.
cluster.number	number of clusters.
cluster.size	vector of cluster sizes (number of points).
min.cluster.size	size of smallest cluster.
noisen	number of noise points, see argument noisecluster (noisen=0 if noisecluster=FALSE).
diameter	vector of cluster diameters (maximum within cluster distances).
average.distance	vector of clusterwise within cluster average distances.
median.distance	vector of clusterwise within cluster distance medians.
separation	vector of clusterwise minimum distances of a point in the cluster to a point of another cluster.
average.toother	vector of clusterwise average distances of a point in the cluster to the points of other clusters.



separation.matrix	matrix of separation values between all pairs of clusters.
ave.between.matrix	matrix of mean dissimilarities between points of every pair of clusters.
average.between	average distance between clusters.
average.within	average distance within clusters (reweighted so that every observation, rather than every distance, has the same weight).
n.between	number of distances between clusters.
n.within	number of distances within clusters.
max.diameter	maximum cluster diameter.
min.separation	minimum cluster separation.
within.cluster.ss	a generalisation of the within clusters sum of squares (k-means objective function), which is obtained if <i>d</i> is a Euclidean distance matrix. For general distance measures, this is half the sum of the within cluster squared dissimilarities divided by the cluster size.
clus.avg.silwidths	vector of cluster average silhouette widths. See <a href="#">silhouette</a> .
avg.silwidth	average silhouette width. See <a href="#">silhouette</a> .
g2	Goodman and Kruskal's Gamma coefficient. See Milligan and Cooper (1985), Gordon (1999, p. 62).
g3	G3 coefficient. See Gordon (1999, p. 62).
pearsongamma	correlation between distances and a 0-1-vector where 0 means same cluster, 1 means different clusters. "Normalized gamma" in Halkidi et al. (2001).
dunn	minimum separation / maximum diameter. Dunn index, see Halkidi et al. (2002).
dunn2	minimum average dissimilarity between two cluster / maximum average within cluster dissimilarity, another version of the family of Dunn indexes.
entropy	entropy of the distribution of cluster memberships, see Meila(2007).
wb.ratio	average.within/average.between.
ch	Calinski and Harabasz index (Calinski and Harabasz 1974, optimal in Milligan and Cooper 1985; generalised for dissimilarities in Hennig and Liao 2013).
cwidegap	vector of widest within-cluster gaps.
widestgap	widest within-cluster gap.
sindex	separation index, see argument sepindex.
corrected.rand	corrected Rand index (if <code>alt.clustering</code> has been specified), see Gordon (1999, p. 198).
vi	variation of information (VI) index (if <code>alt.clustering</code> has been specified), see Meila (2007).

### Note

Because `cluster.stats` processes a full dissimilarity matrix, it isn't suitable for large data sets. You may consider [distcritmulti](#) in that case.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

- Calinski, T., and Harabasz, J. (1974) A Dendrite Method for Cluster Analysis, *Communications in Statistics*, 3, 1-27.
- Gordon, A. D. (1999) *Classification*, 2nd ed. Chapman and Hall.
- Halkidi, M., Batistakis, Y., Vazirgiannis, M. (2001) On Clustering Validation Techniques, *Journal of Intelligent Information Systems*, 17, 107-145.
- Hennig, C. and Liao, T. (2013) How to find an appropriate clustering for mixed-type variables with application to socio-economic stratification, *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series C Applied Statistics*, 62, 309-369.
- Hennig, C. (2013) How many bee species? A case study in determining the number of clusters. In: Spiliopoulou, L. Schmidt-Thieme, R. Janning (eds.): "Data Analysis, Machine Learning and Knowledge Discovery", Springer, Berlin, 41-49.
- Kaufman, L. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1990). "Finding Groups in Data: An Introduction to Cluster Analysis". Wiley, New York.
- Meila, M. (2007) Comparing clusterings? an information based distance, *Journal of Multivariate Analysis*, 98, 873-895.
- Milligan, G. W. and Cooper, M. C. (1985) An examination of procedures for determining the number of clusters. *Psychometrika*, 50, 159-179.

**See Also**

[cqcluster.stats](#) is a more sophisticated version of `cluster.stats` with more options. [silhouette](#), [dist](#), [calinhara](#), [distcritmulti](#). `clusterboot` computes clusterwise stability statistics by re-sampling.

**Examples**

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(200,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0,p=2)
dface <- dist(face)
complete3 <- cutree(hclust(dface),3)
cluster.stats(dface,complete3,
              alt.clustering=as.integer(attr(face,"grouping")))
```

---

cluster.varstats      *Variablewise statistics for clusters*

---

### Description

This function gives some helpful variable-wise information for cluster interpretation, given a clustering and a data set. The output object contains some tables. For categorical variables, tables compare clusterwise distributions with overall distributions. Continuous variables are categorised for this.

If desired, tables, histograms, some standard statistics of continuous variables and validation plots as available through [discrproj](#) (Hennig 2004) are given out on the fly.

### Usage

```
cluster.varstats(clustering, vardata, contdata=vardata,
                 clusterwise=TRUE,
                 tablevar=NULL, catvar=NULL,
                 quantvar=NULL, catvarcats=10,
                 proportions=FALSE,
                 projmethod="none", minsize=ncol(contdata)+2,
                 ask=TRUE, rangefactor=1)
```

```
## S3 method for class 'varwisetables'
print(x, digits=3, ...)
```

### Arguments

clustering	vector of integers. Clustering (needs to be in standard coding, 1,2,...).
vardata	data matrix or data frame of which variables are summarised.
contdata	variable matrix or data frame, normally all or some variables from vardata, on which cluster visualisation by projection methods is performed unless projmethod="none". It should make sense to interpret these variables in a quantitative (interval-scaled) way.
clusterwise	logical. If FALSE, only the output tables are computed but no more detail and graphs are given on the fly.
tablevar	vector of integers. Numbers of variables treated as categorical (i.e., no histograms and statistics, just tables) if clusterwise=TRUE. Note that an error will be produced by factor type variables unless they are declared as categorical here.
catvar	vector of integers. Numbers of variables to be categorised by proportional quantiles for table computation. Recommended for all continuous variables.
quantvar	vector of integers. Variables for which means, standard deviations and quantiles should be given out if clusterwise=TRUE.
catvarcats	integer. Number of categories used for categorisation of variables specified in quantvar.

proportions	logical. If TRUE, output tables contain proportions, otherwise numbers of observations.
projmethod	one of "none", "dc", "bc", "vbc", "mvdc", "adc", "awc" (recommended if not "none"), "arc", "nc", "wnc", "anc". Cluster validation projection method introduced in Hennig (2004), passed on as method argument in <code>discrproj</code> .
minsize	integer. Projection is not carried out for clusters with fewer points than this. (If this is chosen smaller, it may lead to errors with some projection methods.)
ask	logical. If TRUE, <code>par(ask=TRUE)</code> is set in the beginning to prompt the user before plots and <code>par(ask=FALSE)</code> in the end.
rangefactor	numeric. Factor by which to multiply the range for projection plot ranges.
x	an object of class "varwisetables", output object of <code>cluster.varstats</code> .
digits	integer. Number of digits after the decimal point to print out.
...	not used.

### Value

An object of class "varwisetables", which is a list with a table for each variable, giving (categorised) marginal distributions by cluster.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en>

### References

Hennig, C. (2004) Asymmetric linear dimension reduction for classification. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics* 13, 930-945 .

### Examples

```
set.seed(112233)
options(digits=3)
require(MASS)
require(flexmix)
data(Cars93)
Cars934 <- Cars93[,c(3,5,8,10)]
cc <-
  discrete.recode(Cars934,xvarsorted=FALSE,continuous=c(2,3),discrete=c(1,4))
fcc <- flexmix(cc$data~1,k=2,
model=lcmixed(continuous=2,discrete=2,ppdim=c(6,3),diagonal=TRUE))
cv <-
  cluster.varstats(fcc@cluster,Cars934, contdata=Cars934[,c(2,3)],
  tablevar=c(1,4),catvar=c(2,3),quantvar=c(2,3),projmethod="awc",
  ask=FALSE)
print(cv)
```

---

clusterbenchstats      *Run and validate many clusterings*

---

### Description

This runs the methodology explained in Hennig (2019), Akhanli and Hennig (2020). It runs a user-specified set of clustering methods (CBI-functions, see [kmeansCBI](#)) with several numbers of clusters on a dataset, and computes many cluster validation indexes. In order to explore the variation of these indexes, random clusterings on the data are generated, and validation indexes are standardised by use of the random clusterings in order to make them comparable and differences between values interpretable.

The function `print.valstat` can be used to provide weights for the cluster validation statistics, and will then compute a weighted validation index that can be used to compare all clusterings.

See the examples for how to get the indexes A1 and A2 from Akhanli and Hennig (2020).

### Usage

```
clusterbenchstats(data,G,diss = inherits(data, "dist"),
                  scaling=TRUE, clustermethod,
                  methodnames=clustermethod,
                  distmethod=rep(TRUE,length(clustermethod)),
                  ncinput=rep(TRUE,length(clustermethod)),
                  clustermethodpars,
                  npstats=FALSE,
                  useboot=FALSE,
                  bootclassif=NULL,
                  bootmethod="nselectboot",
                  bootruns=25,
                  trace=TRUE,
                  pamcrit=TRUE,snk=2,
                  dnnk=2,
                  nnruns=100,kmruns=100,fnruns=100,avenruns=100,
                  multicore=FALSE,cores=detectCores()-1,
                  useallmethods=TRUE,
                  useallg=FALSE,...)

## S3 method for class 'clusterbenchstats'
print(x,...)
```

### Arguments

<code>data</code>	data matrix or dist-object.
<code>G</code>	vector of integers. Numbers of clusters to consider.
<code>diss</code>	logical. If TRUE, the data matrix is assumed to be a distance/dissimilarity matrix, otherwise it's observations times variables.

scaling	either a logical or a numeric vector of length equal to the number of columns of data. If FALSE, data won't be scaled, otherwise scaling is passed on to <code>scale</code> as <code>argumentscale</code> .
clustermethod	vector of strings specifying names of CBI-functions (see <code>kmeansCBI</code> ). These are the clustering methods to be applied.
methodnames	vector of strings with user-chosen names for clustering methods, one for every method in <code>clustermethod</code> . These can be used to distinguish different methods run by the same CBI-function but with different parameter values such as complete and average linkage for <code>hclustCBI</code> .
distmethod	vector of logicals, of the same length as <code>clustermethod</code> . TRUE means that the clustering method operates on distances. If <code>diss=TRUE</code> , all entries have to be TRUE. Otherwise, if an entry is true, the corresponding method will be applied on <code>dist(data)</code> .
ncinput	vector of logicals, of the same length as <code>clustermethod</code> . TRUE indicates that the corresponding clustering method requires the number of clusters as input and will not estimate the number of clusters itself. Only methods for which this is TRUE can be used with <code>useboot=TRUE</code> .
clustermethodpars	list of the same length as <code>clustermethod</code> . Specifies parameters for all involved clustering methods. Its <i>j</i> th entry is passed to clustering method number <i>k</i> . Can be an empty entry in case all defaults are used for a clustering method. However, the last entry is not allowed to be empty (you may just set a parameter of the last clustering method to its default value if you don't want to specify anything else)! The number of clusters does not need to be specified here.
npstats	logical. If TRUE, <code>distrsimilarity</code> is called and the two validity statistics computed there are added. These require <code>diss=FALSE</code> .
useboot	logical. If TRUE, a stability index (either <code>nselectboot</code> or <code>prediction.strength</code> ) will be involved.
bootclassif	If <code>useboot=TRUE</code> , a vector of strings indicating the classification methods to be used with the stability index for the different methods indicated in <code>clustermethods</code> , see the <code>classification</code> argument of <code>nselectboot</code> and <code>prediction.strength</code> .
bootmethod	either "nselectboot" or "prediction.strength"; stability index to be used if <code>useboot=TRUE</code> .
bootruns	integer. Number of resampling runs. If <code>useboot=TRUE</code> , passed on as <i>B</i> to <code>nselectboot</code> or <i>M</i> to <code>prediction.strength</code> . Note that these are applied to all <code>k</code> mrns+ <code>n</code> nrns+ <code>a</code> venruns+ <code>f</code> nrns random clusterings on top of the regular ones, which may take a lot of time if <code>bootruns</code> and these values are chosen large.
trace	logical. If TRUE, some runtime information is printed.
pamcrit	logical. If TRUE, the average distance of points to their respective cluster centroids is computed (criterion of the PAM clustering method, validation criterion <code>pamc</code> ); centroids are chosen so that they minimise this criterion for the given clustering. Passed on to <code>cqcluster.stats</code> .
snk	integer. Number of neighbours used in coefficient of variation of distance to nearest within cluster neighbour, the <code>cvnnd</code> -statistic (clusters with <code>snk</code> or fewer points are ignored for this). Passed on to <code>cqcluster.stats</code> as argument <code>nnk</code> .

dnk	integer. Number of nearest neighbors to use for dissimilarity to the uniform in case that npstats=TRUE; nnk-argument to be passed on to <a href="#">distrsimilarity</a> .
nruns	integer. Number of runs of <a href="#">stupidknn</a> (random clusterings). With useboot=TRUE one may want to choose this lower than the default for reasons of computation time.
kruns	integer. Number of runs of <a href="#">stupidkcentroids</a> (random clusterings). With useboot=TRUE one may want to choose this lower than the default for reasons of computation time.
fruns	integer. Number of runs of <a href="#">stupidkfn</a> (random clusterings). With useboot=TRUE one may want to choose this lower than the default for reasons of computation time.
avenruns	integer. Number of runs of <a href="#">stupidkaven</a> (random clusterings). With useboot=TRUE one may want to choose this lower than the default for reasons of computation time.
multicore	logical. If TRUE, parallel computing is used through the function <a href="#">mclapply</a> from package <a href="#">parallel</a> ; read warnings there if you intend to use this; it won't work on Windows.
cores	integer. Number of cores for parallelisation.
useallmethods	logical, to be passed on to <a href="#">cgrestandard</a> . If FALSE, only random clustering results are used for standardisation. If TRUE, clustering results from all methods are used.
useallg	logical to be passed on to <a href="#">cgrestandard</a> . If TRUE, standardisation uses results from all numbers of clusters in G. If FALSE, standardisation of results for a specific number of cluster only uses results from that number of clusters.
...	further arguments to be passed on to <a href="#">cqcluster.stats</a> through <a href="#">clustatsum</a> (no effect in <a href="#">print.clusterbenchstats</a> ).
x	object of class "clusterbenchstats".

### Value

The output of `clusterbenchstats` is a big list of lists comprising lists `cm`, `stat`, `sim`, `qstat`, `sstat`

<code>cm</code>	output object of <a href="#">cluster.magazine</a> , see there for details. Clustering of all methods and numbers of clusters on the dataset data.
<code>.</code>	
<code>stat</code>	object of class "valstat", see <a href="#">valstat.object</a> for details. Unstandardised cluster validation statistics.
<code>sim</code>	output object of <a href="#">randomclustersim</a> , see there. validity indexes from random clusterings used for standardisation of validation statistics on data.
<code>qstat</code>	object of class "valstat", see <a href="#">valstat.object</a> for details. Cluster validation statistics standardised by random clusterings, output of <a href="#">cgrestandard</a> based on percentages, i.e., with <code>percentage=TRUE</code> .

sstat object of class "valstat", see `valstat.object` for details. Cluster validation statistics standardised by random clusterings, output of `cgrestandard` based on mean and standard deviation (called Z-score standardisation in Akhanli and Hennig (2020), i.e., with `percentage=FALSE`).

### Note

This may require a lot of computing time and also memory for datasets that are not small, as most indexes require computation and storage of distances.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### References

- Hennig, C. (2019) Cluster validation by measurement of clustering characteristics relevant to the user. In C. H. Skiadas (ed.) *Data Analysis and Applications 1: Clustering and Regression, Modeling-estimating, Forecasting and Data Mining, Volume 2*, Wiley, New York 1-24, <https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.09282>
- Akhanli, S. and Hennig, C. (2020) Calibrating and aggregating cluster validity indexes for context-adapted comparison of clusterings. *Statistics and Computing*, 30, 1523-1544, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11222-020-09958-2>, <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.01822>

### See Also

`valstat.object`, `cluster.magazine`, `kmeansCBI`, `cqcluster.stats`, `clustatsum`, `cgrestandard`

### Examples

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(10, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
clustermethod=c("kmeansCBI", "hclustCBI")
# A clustering method can be used more than once, with different
# parameters
clustermethodpars <- list()
clustermethodpars[[2]] <- list()
clustermethodpars[[2]]$method <- "average"
# Last element of clustermethodpars needs to have an entry!
methodname <- c("kmeans", "average")
cbs <- clusterbenchstats(face, G=2:3, clustermethod=clustermethod,
  methodname=methodname, distmethod=rep(FALSE, 2),
  clustermethodpars=clustermethodpars, nnruns=1, kmruns=1, fnruns=1, avenruns=1)
print(cbs)
print(cbs$qstat, aggregate=TRUE, weights=c(1,0,0,0,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,0,1,1))
# The weights are weights for the validation statistics ordered as in
# cbs$qstat$statistics for computation of an aggregated index, see
# ?print.valstat.
```



```

# Now using bootstrap stability assessment as in Akhanli and Hennig (2020):
bootclassif <- c("centroid","averagedist")
cbsboot <- clusterbenchstats(face,G=2:3,clustermethod=clustermethod,
  methodname=methodname,distmethod=rep(FALSE,2),
  clustermethodpars=clustermethodpars,
  useboot=TRUE,bootclassif=bootclassif,bootmethod="nselectboot",
  bootruns=2,nruns=1,kmruns=1,fnrns=1,avenruns=1,useallg=TRUE)
print(cbsboot)
## Not run:
# Index A1 in Akhanli and Hennig (2020) (need these weights choices):
print(cbsboot$sstat,aggregate=TRUE,weights=c(1,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,1,0,0,0,1,0))
# Index A2 in Akhanli and Hennig (2020) (need these weights choices):
print(cbsboot$sstat,aggregate=TRUE,weights=c(0,0,0,0,1,1,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,1,0))

## End(Not run)

# Results from nselectboot:
plot(cbsboot$sstat,cbsboot$sim,statistic="boot")

```

---

clusterboot

*Clusterwise cluster stability assessment by resampling*


---

## Description

Assessment of the clusterwise stability of a clustering of data, which can be cases\*variables or dissimilarity data. The data is resampled using several schemes (bootstrap, subsetting, jittering, replacement of points by noise) and the Jaccard similarities of the original clusters to the most similar clusters in the resampled data are computed. The mean over these similarities is used as an index of the stability of a cluster (other statistics can be computed as well). The methods are described in Hennig (2007).

clusterboot is an integrated function that computes the clustering as well, using interface functions for various clustering methods implemented in R (several interface functions are provided, but you can implement further ones for your favourite clustering method). See the documentation of the input parameter clustermethod below.

Quite general clustering methods are possible, i.e. methods estimating or fixing the number of clusters, methods producing overlapping clusters or not assigning all cases to clusters (but declaring them as "noise"). Fuzzy clusterings cannot be processed and have to be transformed to crisp clusterings by the interface function.

## Usage

```

clusterboot(data,B=100, distances=(inherits(data, "dist")),
  bootmethod="boot",
  bscompare=TRUE,
  multipleboot=FALSE,
  jittertuning=0.05, noisetuning=c(0.05,4),
  subtuning=floor(nrow(data)/2),
  clustermethod,noisemethod=FALSE,count=TRUE,

```

```

showplots=FALSE,dissolution=0.5,
recover=0.75,seed=NULL,datamatrix=TRUE,...)

## S3 method for class 'clboot'
print(x,statistics=c("mean","dissolution","recovery"),...)

## S3 method for class 'clboot'
plot(x,xlim=c(0,1),breaks=seq(0,1,by=0.05),...)

```

## Arguments

data	by default something that can be coerced into a (numerical) matrix (data frames with non-numerical data are allowed when using <code>datamatrix=FALSE</code> , see below). The data matrix - either an $n \times p$ -data matrix (or data frame) or an $n \times n$ -dissimilarity matrix (or <code>dist</code> -object).
B	integer. Number of resampling runs for each scheme, see <code>bootmethod</code> .
distances	logical. If <code>TRUE</code> , the data is interpreted as dissimilarity matrix. If data is a <code>dist</code> -object, <code>distances=TRUE</code> automatically, otherwise <code>distances=FALSE</code> by default. This means that you have to set it to <code>TRUE</code> manually if data is a dissimilarity matrix.
bootmethod	vector of strings, defining the methods used for resampling. Possible methods: "boot": nonparametric bootstrap (precise behaviour is controlled by parameters <code>bscompare</code> and <code>multipleboot</code> ). "subset": selecting random subsets from the dataset. Size determined by <code>subtuning</code> . "noise": replacing a certain percentage of the points by random noise, see <code>noisetuning</code> . "jitter" add random noise to all points, see <code>jittertuning</code> . (This didn't perform well in Hennig (2007), but you may want to get your own experience.) "bojit" nonparametric bootstrap first, and then adding noise to the points, see <code>jittertuning</code> . <b>Important:</b> only the methods "boot" and "subset" work with dissimilarity data, or if <code>datamatrix=FALSE</code> ! The results in Hennig (2007) indicate that "boot" is generally informative and often quite similar to "subset" and "bojit", while "noise" sometimes provides different information. Therefore the default (for <code>distances=FALSE</code> ) is to use "boot" and "noise". However, some clustering methods may have problems with multiple points, which can be solved by using "bojit" or "subset" instead of "boot" or by <code>multipleboot=FALSE</code> below.
bscompare	logical. If <code>TRUE</code> , multiple points in the bootstrap sample are taken into account to compute the Jaccard similarity to the original clusters (which are represented by their "bootstrap versions", i.e., the points of the original cluster which also occur in the bootstrap sample). If a point was drawn more than once, it is in the "bootstrap version" of the original cluster more than once, too, if <code>bscompare=TRUE</code> . Otherwise multiple points are ignored for the computation of the Jaccard similarities. If <code>multipleboot=FALSE</code> , it doesn't make a difference.

multipleboot	logical. If FALSE, all points drawn more than once in the bootstrap draw are only used once in the bootstrap samples.
jittertuning	positive numeric. Tuning for the "jitter"-method. The noise distribution for jittering is a normal distribution with zero mean. The covariance matrix has the same Eigenvectors as that of the original data set, but the standard deviation along the principal directions is determined by the jittertuning-quantile of the distances between neighboring points projected along these directions.
noisetuning	A vector of two positive numerics. Tuning for the "noise"-method. The first component determines the probability that a point is replaced by noise. Noise is generated by a uniform distribution on a hyperrectangle along the principal directions of the original data set, ranging from -noisetuning[2] to noisetuning[2] times the standard deviation of the data set along the respective direction. Note that only points not replaced by noise are considered for the computation of Jaccard similarities.
subtuning	integer. Size of subsets for "subset".
clustermethod	an interface function (the function name, not a string containing the name, has to be provided!). This defines the clustering method. See the "Details"-section for a list of available interface functions and guidelines how to write your own ones.
noisemethod	logical. If TRUE, the last cluster is regarded as "noise cluster", which means that for computing the Jaccard similarity, it is not treated as a cluster. The noise cluster of the original clustering is only compared with the noise cluster of the clustering of the resampled data. This means that in the clusterboot-output (and plot), if points were assigned to the noise cluster, the last cluster number refers to it, and its Jaccard similarity values refer to comparisons with estimated noise components in resampled datasets only. (Some cluster methods such as <a href="#">tclust</a> and <a href="#">mclustBIC</a> produce such noise components.)
count	logical. If TRUE, the resampling runs are counted on the screen.
showplots	logical. If TRUE, a plot of the first two dimensions of the resampled data set (or the classical MDS solution for dissimilarity data) is shown for every resampling run. The last plot shows the original data set. Ignored if datatomatrix=FALSE.
dissolution	numeric between 0 and 1. If the Jaccard similarity between the resampling version of the original cluster and the most similar cluster on the resampled data is smaller or equal to this value, the cluster is considered as "dissolved". Numbers of dissolved clusters are recorded.
recover	numeric between 0 and 1. If the Jaccard similarity between the resampling version of the original cluster and the most similar cluster on the resampled data is larger than this value, the cluster is considered as "successfully recovered". Numbers of recovered clusters are recorded.
seed	integer. Seed for random generator (fed into set.seed) to make results reproducible. If NULL, results depend on chance.
datatomatrix	logical. If TRUE, data is coerced into a (numerical) matrix at the start of clusterboot. FALSE may be chosen for mixed type data including e.g. categorical factors (assuming that the chosen clustermethod allows for this). This disables some features of clusterboot, see parameters bootmethod and showplots.

...	additional parameters for the clustermethods called by clusterboot. No effect in <code>print.clboot</code> and <code>plot.clboot</code> .
x	object of class <code>clboot</code> .
statistics	specifies in <code>print.clboot</code> , which of the three clusterwise Jaccard similarity statistics "mean", "dissolution" (number of times the cluster has been dissolved) and "recovery" (number of times a cluster has been successfully recovered) is printed.
xlim	transferred to <code>hist</code> .
breaks	transferred to <code>hist</code> .

## Details

Here are some guidelines for interpretation. There is some theoretical justification to consider a Jaccard similarity value smaller or equal to 0.5 as an indication of a "dissolved cluster", see Hennig (2008). Generally, a valid, stable cluster should yield a mean Jaccard similarity value of 0.75 or more. Between 0.6 and 0.75, clusters may be considered as indicating patterns in the data, but which points exactly should belong to these clusters is highly doubtful. Below average Jaccard values of 0.6, clusters should not be trusted. "Highly stable" clusters should yield average Jaccard similarities of 0.85 and above. All of this refers to bootstrap; for the other resampling schemes it depends on the tuning constants, though their default values should grant similar interpretations in most cases.

While  $B=100$  is recommended, smaller run numbers could give quite informative results as well, if computation times become too high.

Note that the stability of a cluster is assessed, but stability is not the only important validity criterion - clusters obtained by very inflexible clustering methods may be stable but not valid, as discussed in Hennig (2007). See [plotcluster](#) for graphical cluster validation.

Information about interface functions for clustering methods:

The following interface functions are currently implemented (in the present package; note that almost all of these functions require the specification of some control parameters, so if you use one of them, look up their common help page [kmeansCBI](#)) first:

**kmeansCBI** an interface to the function [kmeans](#) for k-means clustering. This assumes a `cases*variables` matrix as input.

**hclustCBI** an interface to the function `hclust` for agglomerative hierarchical clustering with optional noise cluster. This function produces a partition and assumes a `cases*variables` matrix as input.

**hclusttreeCBI** an interface to the function `hclust` for agglomerative hierarchical clustering. This function produces a tree (not only a partition; therefore the number of clusters can be huge!) and assumes a `cases*variables` matrix as input.

**disthclustCBI** an interface to the function `hclust` for agglomerative hierarchical clustering with optional noise cluster. This function produces a partition and assumes a dissimilarity matrix as input.

**noisemclustCBI** an interface to the function [mclustBIC](#) for normal mixture model based clustering. This assumes a `cases*variables` matrix as input. Warning: [mclustBIC](#) sometimes has problems with multiple points. It is recommended to use this only together with `multipleboot=FALSE`.

- distnoisemclustCBI** an interface to the function `mclustBIC` for normal mixture model based clustering. This assumes a dissimilarity matrix as input and generates a data matrix by multidimensional scaling first. Warning: `mclustBIC` sometimes has problems with multiple points. It is recommended to use this only together with `multipleboot=FALSE`.
- claraCBI** an interface to the functions `pam` and `clara` for partitioning around medoids. This can be used with `cases*variables` as well as dissimilarity matrices as input.
- pamkCBI** an interface to the function `pamk` for partitioning around medoids. The number of cluster is estimated by the average silhouette width. This can be used with `cases*variables` as well as dissimilarity matrices as input.
- tclustCBI** an interface to the function `tclust` in the `tclust` library for trimmed Gaussian clustering. This assumes a `cases*variables` matrix as input. Note that this function is not currently provided because the `tclust` package is only available in the CRAN archives, but the code is in the Examples-section of the `kmeansCBI-help` page.
- dbscanCBI** an interface to the function `dbscan` for density based clustering. This can be used with `cases*variables` as well as dissimilarity matrices as input..
- mahalCBI** an interface to the function `fixmahal` for fixed point clustering. This assumes a `cases*variables` matrix as input.
- mergenormCBI** an interface to the function `mergenormals` for clustering by merging Gaussian mixture components.
- speccCBI** an interface to the function `specc` for spectral clustering.

You can write your own interface function. The first argument of an interface function should preferably be a data matrix (of class "matrix", but it may be a symmetrical dissimilarity matrix). It can be a data frame, but this restricts some of the functionality of `clusterboot`, see above. Further arguments can be tuning constants for the clustering method. The output of an interface function should be a list containing (at least) the following components:

- result** clustering result, usually a list with the full output of the clustering method (the precise format doesn't matter); whatever you want to use later.
- nc** number of clusters. If some points don't belong to any cluster but are declared as "noise", `nc` includes the noise cluster, and there should be another component `ncc1`, being the number of clusters not including the noise cluster (note that it is not mandatory to define a noise component if not all points are assigned to clusters, but if you do it, the stability of the noise cluster is assessed as well.)
- clusterlist** this is a list consisting of a logical vectors of length of the number of data points (`n`) for each cluster, indicating whether a point is a member of this cluster (TRUE) or not. If a noise cluster is included, it should always be the last vector in this list.
- partition** an integer vector of length `n`, partitioning the data. If the method produces a partition, it should be the clustering. This component is only used for plots, so you could do something like `rep(1, n)` for non-partitioning methods. If a noise cluster is included, `nc=ncc1+1` and the noise cluster is cluster no. `nc`.
- clustermethod** a string indicating the clustering method.

### Value

`clusterboot` returns an object of class "clboot", which is a list with components `result`, `partition`, `nc`, `clustermethod`, `B`, `noisemethod`, `bootmethod`, `multipleboot`, `dissolution`, `recover`, `bootresult`,

bootmean, bootbrd, bootrecover, jitterresult, jittermean, jitterbrd, jitterrecover, subsetresult, subsetmean, subsetbrd, subsetrecover, bojitresult, bojitmean, bojitbrd, bojitrecover, noiserresult, noisemean, noisebrd, noiserecover.

result            clustering result; full output of the selected clustermethod for the original data set.

partition        partition parameter of the selected clustermethod (note that this is only meaningful for partitioning clustering methods).

nc                number of clusters in original data (including noise component if noisemethod=TRUE).

nccl             number of clusters in original data (not including noise component if noisemethod=TRUE).

clustermethod, B, noisemethod, bootmethod, multipleboot, dissolution, recover            input parameters, see above.

bootresult      matrix of Jaccard similarities for bootmethod="boot". Rows correspond to clusters in the original data set. Columns correspond to bootstrap runs.

bootmean        clusterwise means of the bootresult.

bootbrd         clusterwise number of times a cluster has been dissolved.

bootrecover    clusterwise number of times a cluster has been successfully recovered.

subsetresult, subsetmean, etc.            same as bootresult, bootmean, etc., but for the other resampling methods.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### References

Hennig, C. (2007) Cluster-wise assessment of cluster stability. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 52, 258-271.

Hennig, C. (2008) Dissolution point and isolation robustness: robustness criteria for general cluster analysis methods. *Journal of Multivariate Analysis* 99, 1154-1176.

### See Also

[dist](#), interface functions: [kmeansCBI](#), [hclustCBI](#), [hclusttreeCBI](#), [disthclustCBI](#), [noisemclustCBI](#), [distnoisemclustCBI](#), [claraCBI](#), [pamkCBI](#), [dbscanCBI](#), [mahalCBI](#)

### Examples

```
options(digits=3)
set.seed(20000)
face <- rFace(50, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
cf1 <- clusterboot(face, B=3, bootmethod=
  c("boot", "noise", "jitter"), clustermethod=kmeansCBI,
  krange=5, seed=15555)
print(cf1)
```

```

plot(cf1)
cf2 <- clusterboot(dist(face),B=3,bootmethod=
  "subset",clustermethod=dsthclustCBI,
  k=5, cut="number", method="average", showplots=TRUE, seed=15555)
print(cf2)
d1 <- c("a","b","a","c")
d2 <- c("a","a","a","b")
dx <- as.data.frame(cbind(d1,d2))
cpx <- clusterboot(dx,k=2,B=10,clustermethod=claraCBI,
  multipleboot=TRUE,usepam=TRUE,datatomatrix=FALSE)
print(cpx)

```

---

cmahal

*Generation of tuning constant for Mahalanobis fixed point clusters.*


---

### Description

Generates tuning constants  $c_a$  for `fixmahal` dependent on the number of points and variables of the current fixed point cluster (FPC).

This is experimental and only thought for use in `fixmahal`.

### Usage

```
cmahal(n, p, nmin, cmin, nc1, c1 = cmin, q = 1)
```

### Arguments

<code>n</code>	positive integer. Number of points.
<code>p</code>	positive integer. Number of variables.
<code>nmin</code>	integer larger than 1. Smallest number of points for which $c_a$ is computed. For smaller FPC sizes, $c_a$ is set to the value for <code>nmin</code> .
<code>cmin</code>	positive number. Minimum value for $c_a$ .
<code>nc1</code>	positive integer. Number of points at which $c_a=c_1$ .
<code>c1</code>	positive numeric. Tuning constant for <code>cmahal</code> . Value for $c_a$ for FPC size equal to <code>nc1</code> .
<code>q</code>	numeric between 0 and 1. 1 for steepest possible descent of $c_a$ as function of the FPC size. Should presumably always be 1.

### Details

Some experiments suggest that the tuning constant  $c_a$  should decrease with increasing FPC size and increase with increasing `p` in `fixmahal`. This is to prevent too small meaningless FPCs while maintaining the significant larger ones. `cmahal` with `q=1` computes  $c_a$  in such a way that as long as  $c_a > c_{min}$ , the decrease in `n` is as steep as possible in order to maintain the validity of the convergence theorem in Hennig and Christlieb (2002).

**Value**

A numeric vector of length  $n$ , giving the values for  $ca$  for all FPC sizes smaller or equal to  $n$ .

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Hennig, C. and Christlieb, N. (2002) Validating visual clusters in large datasets: Fixed point clusters of spectral features, *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis* 40, 723-739.

**See Also**

[fixmahal](#)

**Examples**

```
plot(1:100,cmahal(100,3,nmin=5,cmin=qchisq(0.99,3),nc1=90),
      xlab="FPC size", ylab="cmahal")
```

---

con.comp

*Connectivity components of an undirected graph*

---

**Description**

Computes the connectivity components of an undirected graph from a matrix giving the edges.

**Usage**

```
con.comp(comat)
```

**Arguments**

`comat` a symmetric logical or 0-1 matrix, where `comat[i, j]=TRUE` means that there is an edge between vertices  $i$  and  $j$ . The diagonal is ignored.

**Details**

The "depth-first search" algorithm of Cormen, Leiserson and Rivest (1990, p. 477) is used.

**Value**

An integer vector, giving the number of the connectivity component for each vertice.



**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Cormen, T. H., Leiserson, C. E. and Rivest, R. L. (1990), *Introduction to Algorithms*, Cambridge: MIT Press.

**See Also**

[hclust](#), [cutree](#) for cutted single linkage trees (often equivalent).

**Examples**

```
set.seed(1000)
x <- rnorm(20)
m <- matrix(0,nrow=20,ncol=20)
for(i in 1:20)
  for(j in 1:20)
    m[i,j] <- abs(x[i]-x[j])
d <- m<0.2
cc <- con.comp(d)
max(cc) # number of connectivity components
plot(x,cc)
# The same should be produced by
# cutree(hclust(as.dist(m),method="single"),h=0.2).
```

---

confusion

*Misclassification probabilities in mixtures*

---

**Description**

Estimates a misclassification probability in a mixture distribution between two mixture components from estimated posterior probabilities regardless of component parameters, see Hennig (2010).

**Usage**

```
confusion(z,pro,i,j,adjustprobs=FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

z	matrix of posterior probabilities for observations (rows) to belong to mixture components (columns), so entries need to sum up to 1 for each row.
pro	vector of component proportions, need to sum up to 1.
i	integer. Component number.
j	integer. Component number.
adjustprobs	logical. If TRUE, probabilities are initially standardised so that those for components i and j add up to one (i.e., if they were the only components).

**Value**

Estimated probability that an observation generated by component  $j$  is classified to component  $i$  by maximum a posteriori rule.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Hennig, C. (2010) Methods for merging Gaussian mixture components, *Advances in Data Analysis and Classification*, 4, 3-34.

**Examples**

```
set.seed(12345)
m <- rpois(20, lambda=5)
dim(m) <- c(5,4)
pro <- apply(m, 2, sum)
pro <- pro/sum(pro)
m <- m/apply(m, 1, sum)
round(confusion(m, pro, 1, 2), digits=2)
```

---

cov.wml

*Weighted Covariance Matrices (Maximum Likelihood)*

---

**Description**

Returns a list containing estimates of the weighted covariance matrix and the mean of the data, and optionally of the (weighted) correlation matrix. The covariance matrix is divided by the sum of the weights, corresponding to  $n$  and the ML-estimator in the case of equal weights, as opposed to  $n-1$  for [cov.wt](#).

**Usage**

```
cov.wml(x, wt = rep(1/nrow(x), nrow(x)), cor = FALSE, center = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

<code>x</code>	a matrix or data frame. As usual, rows are observations and columns are variables.
<code>wt</code>	a non-negative and non-zero vector of weights for each observation. Its length must equal the number of rows of <code>x</code> .
<code>cor</code>	A logical indicating whether the estimated correlation weighted matrix will be returned as well.

`center` Either a logical or a numeric vector specifying the centers to be used when computing covariances. If TRUE, the (weighted) mean of each variable is used, if FALSE, zero is used. If center is numeric, its length must equal the number of columns of x.

### Value

A list containing the following named components:

`cov` the estimated (weighted) covariance matrix.  
`center` an estimate for the center (mean) of the data.  
`n.obs` the number of observations (rows) in x.  
`wt` the weights used in the estimation. Only returned if given as an argument.  
`cor` the estimated correlation matrix. Only returned if 'cor' is 'TRUE'.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### See Also

[cov.wt](#), [cov](#), [var](#)

### Examples

```
x <- c(1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10)
y <- c(1,2,3,8,7,6,5,8,9,10)
cov.wml(cbind(x,y),wt=c(0,0,0,1,1,1,1,1,0,0))
cov.wt(cbind(x,y),wt=c(0,0,0,1,1,1,1,1,0,0))
```

---

`cqcluster.stats`

*Cluster validation statistics (version for use with clusterbenchstats)*

---

### Description

This is a more sophisticated version of [cluster.stats](#) for use with [clusterbenchstats](#), see Hennig (2017). Computes a number of distance-based statistics, which can be used for cluster validation, comparison between clusterings and decision about the number of clusters: cluster sizes, cluster diameters, average distances within and between clusters, cluster separation, biggest within cluster gap, average silhouette widths, the Calinski and Harabasz index, a Pearson version of Hubert's gamma coefficient, the Dunn index, further statistics introduced in Hennig (2017) and two indexes to assess the similarity of two clusterings, namely the corrected Rand index and Meila's VI.

**Usage**

```

cqcluster.stats(d = NULL, clustering, alt.clustering = NULL,
               noisecluster = FALSE,
               silhouette = TRUE, G2 = FALSE, G3 = FALSE, wgap = TRUE, sepindex = TRUE,
               sepprob = 0.1, sepwithnoise = TRUE, compareonly = FALSE,
               aggregateonly = FALSE,
               averagegap=FALSE, pamcrit=TRUE,
               dquantile=0.1,
               nndist=TRUE, nnk=2, standardisation="max", sepall=TRUE, maxk=10,
               cvstan=sqrt(length(clustering)))

## S3 method for class 'cquality'
summary(object, stanbound=TRUE, largeisgood=TRUE, ...)

## S3 method for class 'summary.cquality'
print(x, ...)

```

**Arguments**

<code>d</code>	a distance object (as generated by <code>dist</code> ) or a distance matrix between cases.
<code>clustering</code>	an integer vector of length of the number of cases, which indicates a clustering. The clusters have to be numbered from 1 to the number of clusters.
<code>alt.clustering</code>	an integer vector such as for <code>clustering</code> , indicating an alternative clustering. If provided, the corrected Rand index and Meila's VI for <code>clustering</code> vs. <code>alt.clustering</code> are computed.
<code>noisecluster</code>	logical. If TRUE, it is assumed that the largest cluster number in <code>clustering</code> denotes a 'noise class', i.e. points that do not belong to any cluster. These points are not taken into account for the computation of all functions of within and between cluster distances including the validation indexes.
<code>silhouette</code>	logical. If TRUE, the silhouette statistics are computed, which requires package <code>cluster</code> .
<code>G2</code>	logical. If TRUE, Goodman and Kruskal's index G2 (cf. Gordon (1999), p. 62) is computed. This executes lots of sorting algorithms and can be very slow (it has been improved by R. Francois - thanks!)
<code>G3</code>	logical. If TRUE, the index G3 (cf. Gordon (1999), p. 62) is computed. This executes <code>sort</code> on all distances and can be extremely slow.
<code>wgap</code>	logical. If TRUE, the widest within-cluster gaps (largest link in within-cluster minimum spanning tree) are computed. This is used for finding a good number of clusters in Hennig (2013). See also parameter <code>averagegap</code> .
<code>sepindex</code>	logical. If TRUE, a separation index is computed, defined based on the distances for every point to the closest point not in the same cluster. The separation index is then the mean of the smallest proportion <code>sepprob</code> of these. This allows to formalise separation less sensitive to a single or a few ambiguous points. The output component corresponding to this is <code>sindex</code> , not <code>separation</code> ! This is

	used for finding a good number of clusters in Hennig (2013). See also parameter <code>sepsall</code> .
<code>sepprob</code>	numerical between 0 and 1, see <code>sepindex</code> .
<code>sepwithnoise</code>	logical. If TRUE and <code>sepindex</code> and <code>noisecluster</code> are both TRUE, the noise points are incorporated as cluster in the separation index ( <code>sepindex</code> ) computation. Also they are taken into account for the computation for the minimum cluster separation.
<code>compareonly</code>	logical. If TRUE, only the corrected Rand index and Meila's VI are computed and given out (this requires <code>alt.clustering</code> to be specified).
<code>aggregateonly</code>	logical. If TRUE (and not <code>compareonly</code> ), no clusterwise but only aggregated information is given out (this cuts the size of the output down a bit).
<code>averagegap</code>	logical. If TRUE, the average of the widest within-cluster gaps over all clusters is given out; if FALSE, the maximum is given out.
<code>pamcrit</code>	logical. If TRUE, the average distance of points to their respective cluster centroids is computed (criterion of the PAM clustering method); centroids are chosen so that they minimise this criterion for the given clustering.
<code>dquantile</code>	numerical between 0 and 1; quantile used for kernel density estimator for density indexes, see Hennig (2019), Sec. 3.6.
<code>nndist</code>	logical. If TRUE, average distance to <code>nnkth</code> nearest neighbour within cluster is computed.
<code>nnk</code>	integer. Number of neighbours used in average and coefficient of variation of distance to nearest within cluster neighbour (clusters with <code>nnk</code> or fewer points are ignored for this).
<code>standardisation</code>	"none", "max", "ave", "q90", or a number. See details.
<code>sepsall</code>	logical. If TRUE, a fraction of smallest <code>sepprob</code> distances to other clusters is used from every cluster. Otherwise, a fraction of smallest <code>sepprob</code> distances overall is used in the computation of <code>sindex</code> .
<code>maxk</code>	numeric. Parsimony is defined as the number of clusters divided by <code>maxk</code> .
<code>cvstan</code>	numeric. <code>cvnnd</code> is standardised by <code>cvstan</code> if there is standardisation, see Details.
<code>object</code>	object of class <code>cquality</code> , output of <code>cqcluster.stats</code> .
<code>x</code>	object of class <code>cquality</code> , output of <code>cqcluster.stats</code> .
<code>stanbound</code>	logical. If TRUE, all index values larger than 1 will be set to 1, and all values smaller than 0 will be set to 0. This is for preparation in case of <code>largeisgood=TRUE</code> (if values are already suitably standardised within <code>cqcluster.stats</code> , it won't do harm and can do good).
<code>largeisgood</code>	logical. If TRUE, indexes <code>x</code> are transformed to $1-x$ in case that before transformation smaller values indicate a better clustering (that's <code>average.within</code> , <code>mnd</code> , <code>widestgap</code> , <code>within.cluster.ss</code> , <code>dindex</code> , <code>denscut</code> , <code>pamc</code> , <code>max.diameter</code> , <code>highdgap</code> , <code>cvnnd</code> . For this to make sense, <code>cqcluster.stats</code> should be run with <code>standardisation="max"</code> and <code>summary.cquality</code> with <code>stanbound=TRUE</code> .
<code>...</code>	no effect.

## Details

The standardisation-parameter governs the standardisation of the index values. `standardisation="none"` means that unstandardised raw values of indexes are given out. Otherwise, entropy will be standardised by the maximum possible value for the given number of clusters; `within.cluster.ss` and `between.cluster.ss` will be standardised by the overall sum of squares; `mnnd` will be standardised by the maximum distance to the `nnk`th nearest neighbour within cluster; `pearsongamma` will be standardised by adding 1 and dividing by 2; `cvnn` will be standardised by `cvstan` (the default is the possible maximum).

`standardisation` allows options for the standardisation of `average.within`, `sindex`, `wgap`, `pamcrit`, `max.diameter`, `min.separation` and can be "max" (maximum distance), "ave" (average distance), `q90` (0.9-quantile of distances), or a positive number. "max" is the default and standardises all the listed indexes into the range [0,1].

## Value

`cqcluster.stats` with `compareonly=FALSE` and `aggregateonly=FALSE` returns a list of type `cquality` containing the components `n`, `cluster.number`, `cluster.size`, `min.cluster.size`, `noisen`, `diameter`, `average.distance`, `median.distance`, `separation`, `average.toother`, `separation.matrix`, `ave.between.matrix`, `average.between`, `average.within`, `n.between`, `n.within`, `max.diameter`, `min.separation`, `within.cluster.ss`, `clus.avg.silwidths`, `avg.silwidth`, `g2`, `g3`, `pearsongamma`, `dunn`, `dunn2`, `entropy`, `wb.ratio`, `ch`, `cwidegap`, `widestgap`, `corrected.rand`, `vi`, `sindex`, `svec`, `psep`, `stan`, `nnk`, `mnnd`, `pamc`, `pamcentroids`, `dindex`, `denscut`, `highdgap`, `npenalty`, `dpenalty`, `withindensp`, `densoc`, `pdistto`, `pclosetomode`, `distto`, `percwens`, `percdensoc`, `parsimony`, `cvnnd`, `cvnndc`. Some of these are standardised, see Details. If `compareonly=TRUE`, only `corrected.rand`, `vi` are given out. If `aggregateonly=TRUE`, only `n`, `cluster.number`, `min.cluster.size`, `noisen`, `diameter`, `average.between`, `average.within`, `max.diameter`, `min.separation`, `within.cluster.ss`, `avg.silwidth`, `g2`, `g3`, `pearsongamma`, `dunn`, `dunn2`, `entropy`, `wb.ratio`, `ch`, `widestgap`, `corrected.rand`, `vi`, `sindex`, `svec`, `psep`, `stan`, `nnk`, `mnnd`, `pamc`, `pamcentroids`, `dindex`, `denscut`, `highdgap`, `parsimony`, `cvnnd`, `cvnndc` are given out.

`summary.cquality` returns a list of type `summary.cquality` with components `average.within`, `nnk`, `mnnd`, `avg.silwidth`, `widestgap`, `sindex`, `pearsongamma`, `entropy`, `pamc`, `within.cluster.ss`, `dindex`, `denscut`, `highdgap`, `parsimony`, `max.diameter`, `min.separation`, `cvnnd`. These are as documented below for `cqcluster.stats`, but after transformation by `stanbound` and `largeisgood`, see arguments.

<code>n</code>	number of points.
<code>cluster.number</code>	number of clusters.
<code>cluster.size</code>	vector of cluster sizes (number of points).
<code>min.cluster.size</code>	size of smallest cluster.
<code>noisen</code>	number of noise points, see argument <code>noisecluster</code> ( <code>noisen=0</code> if <code>noisecluster=FALSE</code> ).
<code>diameter</code>	vector of cluster diameters (maximum within cluster distances).
<code>average.distance</code>	vector of clusterwise within cluster average distances.
<code>median.distance</code>	vector of clusterwise within cluster distance medians.

separation	vector of clusterwise minimum distances of a point in the cluster to a point of another cluster.
average.toother	vector of clusterwise average distances of a point in the cluster to the points of other clusters.
separation.matrix	matrix of separation values between all pairs of clusters.
ave.between.matrix	matrix of mean dissimilarities between points of every pair of clusters.
avebetween	average distance between clusters.
avewithin	average distance within clusters (reweighted so that every observation, rather than every distance, has the same weight).
n.between	number of distances between clusters.
n.within	number of distances within clusters.
maxdiameter	maximum cluster diameter.
minsep	minimum cluster separation.
withinss	a generalisation of the within clusters sum of squares (k-means objective function), which is obtained if $d$ is a Euclidean distance matrix. For general distance measures, this is half the sum of the within cluster squared dissimilarities divided by the cluster size.
clus.avg.silwidths	vector of cluster average silhouette widths. See <a href="#">silhouette</a> .
asw	average silhouette width. See <a href="#">silhouette</a> .
g2	Goodman and Kruskal's Gamma coefficient. See Milligan and Cooper (1985), Gordon (1999, p. 62).
g3	G3 coefficient. See Gordon (1999, p. 62).
pearsongamma	correlation between distances and a 0-1-vector where 0 means same cluster, 1 means different clusters. "Normalized gamma" in Halkidi et al. (2001).
dunn	minimum separation / maximum diameter. Dunn index, see Halkidi et al. (2002).
dunn2	minimum average dissimilarity between two cluster / maximum average within cluster dissimilarity, another version of the family of Dunn indexes.
entropy	entropy of the distribution of cluster memberships, see Meila(2007).
wb.ratio	average.within/average.between.
ch	Calinski and Harabasz index (Calinski and Harabasz 1974, optimal in Milligan and Cooper 1985; generalised for dissimilarities in Hennig and Liao 2013).
cwidegap	vector of widest within-cluster gaps.
widestgap	widest within-cluster gap or average of cluster-wise widest within-cluster gap, depending on parameter averagegap.
corrected.rand	corrected Rand index (if <code>alt.clustering</code> has been specified), see Gordon (1999, p. 198).
vi	variation of information (VI) index (if <code>alt.clustering</code> has been specified), see Meila (2007).

sindex	separation index, see argument sepindex.
svec	vector of smallest closest distances of points to next cluster that are used in the computation of sindex if sepall=TRUE.
psep	vector of all closest distances of points to next cluster.
stan	value by which som statistics were standardised, see Details.
nnk	value of input parameter nnk.
mnnd	average distance to nnkth nearest neighbour within cluster.
pamc	average distance to cluster centroid.
pamcentroids	index numbers of cluster centroids.
dindex	this index measures to what extent the density decreases from the cluster mode to the outskirts; I-densdec in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019); low values are good.
denscut	this index measures whether cluster boundaries run through density valleys; I-densbound in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019); low values are good.
highdgap	this measures whether there is a large within-cluster gap with high density on both sides; I-highdgap in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019); low values are good.
npenalty	vector of penalties for all clusters that are used in the computation of denscut, see Hennig (2019) (these are sums of penalties over all points in the cluster).
depenalty	vector of penalties for all clusters that are used in the computation of dindex, see Hennig (2019) (these are sums of several penalties for density increase when going from the mode outward in the cluster).
withindensp	distance-based kernel density values for all points as computed in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019).
densoc	contribution of points from other clusters than the one to which a point is assigned to the density, for all points; called $h_o$ in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019).
pdistto	list that for all clusters has a sequence of point numbers. These are the points already incorporated in the sequence of points constructed in the algorithm in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019) to which the next point to be joined is connected.
pclosetomode	list that for all clusters has a sequence of point numbers. Sequence of points to be incorporated in the sequence of points constructed in the algorithm in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019).
distto	list that for all clusters has a sequence of differences between the standardised densities (see percwdens) at the new point added and the point to which it is connected (if this is positive, the penalty is this to the square), in the algorithm in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019).
percwdens	this is withindensp divided by its maximum.
percdensoc	this is densoc divided by the maximum of withindensp, called $h_o^*$ in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019).
parsimony	number of clusters divided by maxk.
cvnnd	coefficient of variation of dissimilarities to nnkth nearest within-cluster neighbour, measuring uniformity of within-cluster densities, weighted over all clusters, see Sec. 3.7 of Hennig (2019).
cvnndc	vector of cluster-wise coefficients of variation of dissimilarities to nnkth nearest within-cluster neighbour as required in computation of cvnnd.



**Note**

Because `cqcluster.stats` processes a full dissimilarity matrix, it isn't suitable for large data sets. You may consider `distcritmulti` in that case.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

- Akhanli, S. and Hennig, C. (2020) Calibrating and aggregating cluster validity indexes for context-adapted comparison of clusterings. *Statistics and Computing*, 30, 1523-1544, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11222-020-09958-2>, <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.01822>
- Calinski, T., and Harabasz, J. (1974) A Dendrite Method for Cluster Analysis, *Communications in Statistics*, 3, 1-27.
- Gordon, A. D. (1999) *Classification*, 2nd ed. Chapman and Hall.
- Halkidi, M., Batistakis, Y., Vazirgiannis, M. (2001) On Clustering Validation Techniques, *Journal of Intelligent Information Systems*, 17, 107-145.
- Hennig, C. and Liao, T. (2013) How to find an appropriate clustering for mixed-type variables with application to socio-economic stratification, *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series C Applied Statistics*, 62, 309-369.
- Hennig, C. (2013) How many bee species? A case study in determining the number of clusters. In: Spiliopoulou, L. Schmidt-Thieme, R. Janning (eds.): "Data Analysis, Machine Learning and Knowledge Discovery", Springer, Berlin, 41-49.
- Hennig, C. (2019) Cluster validation by measurement of clustering characteristics relevant to the user. In C. H. Skiadas (ed.) *Data Analysis and Applications 1: Clustering and Regression, Modeling-estimating, Forecasting and Data Mining, Volume 2*, Wiley, New York 1-24, <https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.09282>
- Kaufman, L. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1990). "Finding Groups in Data: An Introduction to Cluster Analysis". Wiley, New York.
- Meila, M. (2007) Comparing clusterings? an information based distance, *Journal of Multivariate Analysis*, 98, 873-895.
- Milligan, G. W. and Cooper, M. C. (1985) An examination of procedures for determining the number of clusters. *Psychometrika*, 50, 159-179.

**See Also**

`cluster.stats`, `silhouette`, `dist`, `calinhara`, `distcritmulti`. `clusterboot` computes clusterwise stability statistics by resampling.

**Examples**

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(200, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
```

```

dface <- dist(face)
complete3 <- cutree(hclust(dface),3)
cqcluster.stats(dface,complete3,
                alt.clustering=as.integer(attr(face,"grouping")))

```

cvnn

*Cluster validation based on nearest neighbours***Description**

Cluster validity index based on nearest neighbours as defined in Liu et al. (2013) with a correction explained in Halkidi et al. (2015).

**Usage**

```
cvnn(d=NULL,clusterings,k=5)
```

**Arguments**

d	dissimilarity matrix or dist-object.
clusterings	list of vectors of integers with length =nrow(d); indicating the cluster for each observation for several clusterings (list elements) to be compared.
k	integer. Number of nearest neighbours.

**Value**

List with components (see Liu et al. (2013), Halkidi et al. (2015) for details)

cvnnindex	vector of index values for the various clusterings, see Liu et al. (2013), the lower the better.
sep	vector of separation values.
comp	vector of compactness values.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Halkidi, M., Vazirgiannis, M. and Hennig, C. (2015) Method-independent indices for cluster validation. In C. Hennig, M. Meila, F. Murtagh, R. Rocci (eds.) *Handbook of Cluster Analysis*, CRC Press/Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton.

Liu, Y, Li, Z., Xiong, H., Gao, X., Wu, J. and Wu, S. (2013) Understanding and enhancement of internal clustering validation measures. *IEEE Transactions on Cybernetics* 43, 982-994.

**Examples**

```
options(digits=3)
iriss <- as.matrix(iris[c(1:10,51:55,101:105),-5])
irisc <- as.numeric(iris[c(1:10,51:55,101:105),5])
print(cvnn(dist(iriss),list(irisc,rep(1:4,5))))
```

---

cweight

*Weight function for AWC*

---

**Description**

For use in awcoord only.

**Usage**

```
cweight(x, ca)
```

**Arguments**

x	numerical.
ca	numerical.

**Value**

ca/x if smaller than 1, else 1.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**See Also**

[awcoord](#)

**Examples**

```
cweight(4,1)
```

---

 dbscan

*DBSCAN density reachability and connectivity clustering*


---

## Description

Generates a density based clustering of arbitrary shape as introduced in Ester et al. (1996).

## Usage

```

dbscan(data, eps, MinPts = 5, scale = FALSE, method = c("hybrid", "raw",
  "dist"), seeds = TRUE, showplot = FALSE, countmode = NULL)
## S3 method for class 'dbscan'
print(x, ...)
## S3 method for class 'dbscan'
plot(x, data, ...)
## S3 method for class 'dbscan'
predict(object, data, newdata = NULL,
  predict.max=1000, ...)

```

## Arguments

data	data matrix, data.frame, dissimilarity matrix or dist-object. Specify method="dist" if the data should be interpreted as dissimilarity matrix or object. Otherwise Euclidean distances will be used.
eps	Reachability distance, see Ester et al. (1996).
MinPts	Reachability minimum no. of points, see Ester et al. (1996).
scale	scale the data if TRUE.
method	"dist" treats data as distance matrix (relatively fast but memory expensive), "raw" treats data as raw data and avoids calculating a distance matrix (saves memory but may be slow), "hybrid" expects also raw data, but calculates partial distance matrices (very fast with moderate memory requirements).
seeds	FALSE to not include the isseed-vector in the dbscan-object.
showplot	0 = no plot, 1 = plot per iteration, 2 = plot per subiteration.
countmode	NULL or vector of point numbers at which to report progress.
x	object of class dbscan.
object	object of class dbscan.
newdata	matrix or data.frame with raw data to predict.
predict.max	max. batch size for predictions.
...	Further arguments transferred to plot methods.

**Details**

Clusters require a minimum no of points (MinPts) within a maximum distance (eps) around one of its members (the seed). Any point within eps around any point which satisfies the seed condition is a cluster member (recursively). Some points may not belong to any clusters (noise).

We have clustered a 100.000 x 2 dataset in 40 minutes on a Pentium M 1600 MHz.

`print.dbscan` shows a statistic of the number of points belonging to the clusters that are seeds and border points.

`plot.dbscan` distinguishes between seed and border points by plot symbol.

**Value**

`predict.dbscan` gives out a vector of predicted clusters for the points in `newdata`.

`dbscan` gives out an object of class 'dbscan' which is a LIST with components

<code>cluster</code>	integer vector coding cluster membership with noise observations (singletons) coded as 0
<code>isseed</code>	logical vector indicating whether a point is a seed (not border, not noise)
<code>eps</code>	parameter eps
<code>MinPts</code>	parameter MinPts

**Note**

this is a simplified version of the original algorithm (no K-D-trees used), thus we have  $o(n^2)$  instead of  $o(n * \log(n))$

**Author(s)**

Jens Oehlschlaegel, based on a draft by Christian Hennig.

**References**

Martin Ester, Hans-Peter Kriegel, Joerg Sander, Xiaowei Xu (1996). A Density-Based Algorithm for Discovering Clusters in Large Spatial Databases with Noise. Institute for Computer Science, University of Munich. Proceedings of 2nd International Conference on Knowledge Discovery and Data Mining (KDD-96).

**Examples**

```
set.seed(665544)
n <- 600
x <- cbind(runif(10, 0, 10)+rnorm(n, sd=0.2), runif(10, 0, 10)+rnorm(n,
  sd=0.2))
par(bg="grey40")
ds <- dbscan(x, 0.2)
# run with showplot=1 to see how dbscan works.
ds
plot(ds, x)
```

```

x2 <- matrix(0,nrow=4,ncol=2)
x2[1,] <- c(5,2)
x2[2,] <- c(8,3)
x2[3,] <- c(4,4)
x2[4,] <- c(9,9)
predict(ds, x, x2)

n <- 600
x <- cbind((1:3)+rnorm(n, sd=0.2), (1:3)+rnorm(n, sd=0.2))

# Not run, but results from my machine are 0.105 - 0.068 - 0.255:
# system.time(ds <- dbscan(x, 0.3, countmode=NULL, method="raw"))[3]
# system.time(dsb <- dbscan(x, 0.3, countmode=NULL, method="hybrid"))[3]
# system.time(dsc <- dbscan(dist(x), 0.3, countmode=NULL,
#   method="dist"))[3]

```

---

dipp.tantrum

*Simulates p-value for dip test*


---

### Description

Simulates p-value for dip test (see [dip](#)) in the way suggested by Tantrum, Murua and Stuetzle (2003) from the closest unimodal distribution determined by kernel density estimation with bandwidth chosen so that the density just becomes unimodal. This is less conservative (and in fact sometimes anti-conservative) than the values from [dip.test](#).

### Usage

```
dipp.tantrum(xdata,d,M=100)
```

### Arguments

xdata	numeric vector. One-dimensional dataset.
d	numeric. Value of dip statistic.
M	integer. Number of artificial datasets generated in order to estimate the p-value.

### Value

List with components

p.value	approximated p-value.
bw	borderline unimodality bandwidth in <a href="#">density</a> with default settings.
dv	vector of dip statistic values from simulated artificial data.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

## References

J. A. Hartigan and P. M. Hartigan (1985) The Dip Test of Unimodality, *Annals of Statistics*, 13, 70-84.

Tantrum, J., Murua, A. and Stuetzle, W. (2003) Assessment and Pruning of Hierarchical Model Based Clustering, *Proceedings of the ninth ACM SIGKDD international conference on Knowledge discovery and data mining*, Washington, D.C., 197-205.

## Examples

```
# not run, requires package diptest
# x <- runif(100)
# d <- dip(x)
# dt <- dipp.tantrum(x,d,M=10)
```

---

diptest.multi

*Diptest for discriminant coordinate projection*

---

## Description

Diptest (Hartigan and Hartigan, 1985, see [dip](#)) for data projected in discriminant coordinate separating optimally two class means (see `discrcoord`) as suggested by Tantrum, Murua and Stuetzle (2003).

## Usage

```
diptest.multi(xdata,class,pvalue="uniform",M=100)
```

## Arguments

xdata	matrix. Potentially multidimensional dataset.
class	vector of integers giving class numbers for observations.
pvalue	"uniform" or "tantrum". Defines whether the p-value is computed from a uniform null model as suggested in Hartigan and Hartigan (1985, using <code>dip.test</code> ) or as suggested in Tantrum et al. (2003, using <code>dipp.tantrum</code> ).
M	integer. Number of artificial datasets generated in order to estimate the p-value if <code>pvalue="tantrum"</code> .

## Value

The resulting p-value.

## Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

## References

- J. A. Hartigan and P. M. Hartigan (1985) The Dip Test of Unimodality, *Annals of Statistics*, 13, 70-84.
- Tantrum, J., Murua, A. and Stuetzle, W. (2003) Assessment and Pruning of Hierarchical Model Based Clustering, *Proceedings of the ninth ACM SIGKDD international conference on Knowledge discovery and data mining*, Washington, D.C., 197-205.

## Examples

```
require(diptest)
x <- cbind(runif(100),runif(100))
partition <- 1+(x[,1]<0.5)
d1 <- diptest.multi(x,partition)
d2 <- diptest.multi(x,partition,pvalue="tantrum",M=10)
```

---

discrcoord

*Discriminant coordinates/canonical variates*

---

## Description

Computes discriminant coordinates, sometimes referred to as "canonical variates" as described in Seber (1984).

## Usage

```
discrcoord(xd, clvecd, pool = "n", ...)
```

## Arguments

xd	the data matrix; a numerical object which can be coerced to a matrix.
clvecd	integer vector of class numbers; length must equal nrow(xd).
pool	string. Determines how the within classes covariance is pooled. "n" means that the class covariances are weighted corresponding to the number of points in each class (default). "equal" means that all classes get equal weight.
...	no effect

## Details

The matrix T (see Seber (1984), p. 270) is inverted by use of [tdecomp](#), which can be expected to give reasonable results for singular within-class covariance matrices.

## Value

List with the following components

ev	eigenvalues in descending order.
units	columns are coordinates of projection basis vectors. New points x can be projected onto the projection basis vectors by <code>x %*% units</code>
proj	projections of xd onto units.



**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Seber, G. A. F. (1984). *Multivariate Observations*. New York: Wiley.

**See Also**

[plotcluster](#) for straight forward discriminant plots.

[batcoord](#) for discriminating projections for two classes, so that also the differences in variance are shown (discrcoord is based only on differences in mean).

[rFace](#) for generation of the example data used below.

**Examples**

```
set.seed(4634)
face <- rFace(600,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0)
grface <- as.integer(attr(face,"grouping"))
dcf <- discrcoord(face,grface)
plot(dcf$proj,col=grface)
# ...done in one step by function plotcluster.
```

---

discrete.recode

*Recodes mixed variables dataset*


---

**Description**

Recodes a dataset with mixed continuous and categorical variables so that the continuous variables come first and the categorical variables have standard coding 1, 2, 3,... (in lexicographical ordering of values coerced to strings).

**Usage**

```
discrete.recode(x, xvarsorted=TRUE, continuous=0, discrete)
```

**Arguments**

x	data matrix or data frame (not a tibble). The data need to be organised case-wise, i.e., if there are categorical variables only, and 15 cases with values c(1,1,2) on the 3 variables, the data matrix needs 15 rows with values 1 1 2. (Categorical variables could take numbers or strings or anything that can be coerced to factor levels as values.)
xvarsorted	logical. If TRUE, the continuous variables are assumed to be the first ones, and the categorical variables to be behind them.

continuous	vector of integers giving positions of the continuous variables. If <code>xvarsorted=TRUE</code> , a single integer, number of continuous variables.
discrete	vector of integers giving positions of the categorical variables (the variables need to be coded in such a way that <code>data.matrix</code> converts them to something numeric). If <code>xvarsorted=TRUE</code> , a single integer, number of categorical variables.

### Value

A list with components

data	data matrix with continuous variables first and categorical variables in standard coding behind them.
ppdim	vector of categorical variable-wise numbers of categories.
discretelevels	list of levels of the categorical variables belonging to what is treated by <code>flexmixedruns</code> as category 1, 2, 3 etc.
continuous	number of continuous variables.
discrete	number of categorical variables.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en>

### See Also

[lcmixed](#)

### Examples

```
set.seed(776655)
v1 <- rnorm(20)
v2 <- rnorm(20)
d1 <- sample(c(2,4,6,8),20,replace=TRUE)
d2 <- sample(1:4,20,replace=TRUE)
ldata <- cbind(v1,d1,v2,d2)
lc <-
discrete.recode(ldata,xvarsorted=FALSE,continuous=c(1,3),discrete=c(2,4))
require(MASS)
data(Cars93)
Cars934 <- Cars93[,c(3,5,8,10)]
cc <- discrete.recode(Cars934,xvarsorted=FALSE,continuous=c(2,3),discrete=c(1,4))
```

discrproj

*Linear dimension reduction for classification***Description**

An interface for ten methods of linear dimension reduction in order to separate the groups optimally in the projected data. Includes classical discriminant coordinates, methods to project differences in mean and covariance structure, asymmetric methods (separation of a homogeneous class from a heterogeneous one), local neighborhood-based methods and methods based on robust covariance matrices.

**Usage**

```
discrproj(x, clvecd, method="dc", clnum=NULL, ignorepoints=FALSE,
          ignorenum=0, ...)
```

**Arguments**

x	the data matrix; a numerical object which can be coerced to a matrix.
clvecd	vector of class numbers which can be coerced into integers; length must equal nrow(xd).
method	one of <b>"dc"</b> usual discriminant coordinates, see <a href="#">discrcoord</a> , <b>"bc"</b> Bhattacharyya coordinates, first coordinate showing mean differences, second showing covariance matrix differences, see <a href="#">batcoord</a> , <b>"vbc"</b> variance dominated Bhattacharyya coordinates, see <a href="#">batcoord</a> , <b>"mvdc"</b> added means and variance differences optimizing coordinates, see <a href="#">mvdcoord</a> , <b>"adc"</b> asymmetric discriminant coordinates, see <a href="#">adcoord</a> , <b>"awc"</b> asymmetric discriminant coordinates with weighted observations, see <a href="#">awcoord</a> , <b>"arc"</b> asymmetric discriminant coordinates with weighted observations and robust MCD-covariance matrix, see <a href="#">awcoord</a> , <b>"nc"</b> neighborhood based coordinates, see <a href="#">ncoord</a> , <b>"wnc"</b> neighborhood based coordinates with weighted neighborhoods, see <a href="#">ncoord</a> , <b>"anc"</b> asymmetric neighborhood based coordinates, see <a href="#">ancoord</a> . Note that "bc", "vbc", "adc", "awc", "arc" and "anc" assume that there are only two classes.
clnum	integer. Number of the class which is attempted to plot homogeneously by "asymmetric methods", which are the methods assuming that there are only two classes, as indicated above.
ignorepoints	logical. If TRUE, points with label ignorenum in clvecd are ignored in the computation for method and are only projected afterwards onto the resulting units. If pch=NULL, the plot symbol for these points is "N".

ignorenum      one of the potential values of the components of `clvecd`. Only has effect if `ignorepoints=TRUE`, see above.

...              additional parameters passed to the projection methods.

### Value

`discrproj` returns the output of the chosen projection method, which is a list with at least the components `ev`, `units`, `proj`. For detailed informations see the help pages of the projection methods.

`ev`              eigenvalues in descending order, usually indicating portion of information in the corresponding direction.

`units`          columns are coordinates of projection basis vectors. New points `x` can be projected onto the projection basis vectors by `x %*% units`

`proj`            projections of `xd` onto `units`.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### References

Hennig, C. (2004) Asymmetric linear dimension reduction for classification. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics* 13, 930-945 .

Hennig, C. (2005) A method for visual cluster validation. In: Weihs, C. and Gaul, W. (eds.): *Classification - The Ubiquitous Challenge*. Springer, Heidelberg 2005, 153-160.

Seber, G. A. F. (1984). *Multivariate Observations*. New York: Wiley.

Fukunaga (1990). *Introduction to Statistical Pattern Recognition* (2nd ed.). Boston: Academic Press.

### See Also

[discrcoord](#), [batcoord](#), [mvdcoord](#), [adcoord](#), [awcoord](#), [ncoord](#), [ancoord](#).  
[rFace](#) for generation of the example data used below.

### Examples

```
set.seed(4634)
face <- rFace(300,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0,p=3)
grface <- as.integer(attr(face,"grouping"))

# The abs in the following is there to unify the output,
# because eigenvectors are defined only up to their sign.
# Statistically it doesn't make sense to compute absolute values.
round(abs(discrproj(face,grface, method="nc")$units),digits=2)
round(abs(discrproj(face,grface, method="wnc")$units),digits=2)
round(abs(discrproj(face,grface, clnum=1, method="arc")$units),digits=2)
```

---

distancefactor                      *Factor for dissimilarity of mixed type data*

---

### Description

Computes a factor that can be used to standardise ordinal categorical variables and binary dummy variables coding categories of nominal scaled variables for Euclidean dissimilarity computation in mixed type data. See Hennig and Liao (2013).

### Usage

```
distancefactor(cat,n=NULL, catsizes=NULL,type="categorical",
               normfactor=2,qfactor=ifelse(type=="categorical",1/2,
               1/(1+1/(cat-1))))
```

### Arguments

cat	integer. Number of categories of the variable to be standardised. Note that for type="categorical" the number of categories of the original variable is required, although the distancefactor is used to standardise dummy variables for the categories.
n	integer. Number of data points.
catsizes	vector of integers giving numbers of observations per category. One of n and catsizes must be supplied. If catsizes=NULL, rep(round(n/cat),cat) is used (this may be appropriate as well if numbers of observations of categories are unequal, if the researcher decides that the dissimilarity measure should not be influenced by empirical category sizes).
type	"categorical" if the factor is used for dummy variables belonging to a nominal variable, "ordinal" if the factor is used for an ordinal variable ind standard Likert coding.
normfactor	numeric. Factor on which standardisation is based. As a default, this is $E(X_1 - X_2)^2 = 2$ for independent unit variance variables.
qfactor	numeric. Factor q in Hennig and Liao (2013) to adjust for clumping effects due to discreteness.

### Value

A factor by which to multiply the variable in order to make it comparable to a unit variance continuous variable when aggregated in Euclidean fashion for dissimilarity computation, so that expected effective difference between two realisations of the variable equals qfactor\*normfactor.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en>

## References

Hennig, C. and Liao, T. (2013) How to find an appropriate clustering for mixed-type variables with application to socio-economic stratification, *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series C Applied Statistics*, 62, 309-369.

## See Also

[lcmixed](#), [pam](#)

## Examples

```
set.seed(776655)
d1 <- sample(1:5,20,replace=TRUE)
d2 <- sample(1:4,20,replace=TRUE)
ldata <- cbind(d1,d2)
lc <- cat2bin(ldata,categorical=1)$data
lc[,1:5] <- lc[,1:5]*distancefactor(5,20,type="categorical")
lc[,6] <- lc[,6]*distancefactor(4,20,type="ordinal")
```

---

distcritmulti

*Distance based validity criteria for large data sets*

---

## Description

Approximates average silhouette width or the Pearson version of Hubert's gamma criterion by hacking the dataset into pieces and averaging the subset-wise values, see Hennig and Liao (2013).

## Usage

```
distcritmulti(x,clustering,part=NULL,ns=10,criterion="asw",
             fun="dist",metric="euclidean",
             count=FALSE,seed=NULL,...)
```

## Arguments

x	cases times variables data matrix.
clustering	vector of integers indicating the clustering.
part	vector of integer subset sizes; sum should be smaller or equal to the number of cases of x. If NULL, subset sizes are chosen approximately equal.
ns	integer. Number of subsets, only used if part==NULL.
criterion	"asw" or "pearsongamma", specifies whether the average silhouette width or the Pearson version of Hubert's gamma is computed.
fun	"dist" or "daisy", specifies which function is used for computing dissimilarities.
metric	passed on to <a href="#">dist</a> (as argument method) or <a href="#">daisy</a> to determine which dissimilarity is used.

count	logical. if TRUE, the subset number just processed is printed.
seed	integer, random seed. (If NULL, result depends on random numbers.)
...	further arguments to be passed on to <code>dist</code> or <code>daisy</code> .

### Value

A list with components `crit.overall`, `crit.sub`, `crit.sd`, `part`.

<code>crit.overall</code>	value of criterion.
<code>crit.sub</code>	vector of subset-wise criterion values.
<code>crit.sd</code>	standard deviation of <code>crit.sub</code> , can be used to assess stability.
<code>subsets</code>	list of case indexes in subsets.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en>

### References

- Halkidi, M., Batistakis, Y., Vazirgiannis, M. (2001) On Clustering Validation Techniques, *Journal of Intelligent Information Systems*, 17, 107-145.
- Hennig, C. and Liao, T. (2013) How to find an appropriate clustering for mixed-type variables with application to socio-economic stratification, *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series C Applied Statistics*, 62, 309-369.
- Kaufman, L. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1990). "Finding Groups in Data: An Introduction to Cluster Analysis". Wiley, New York.

### See Also

[cluster.stats](#), [silhouette](#)

### Examples

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(50, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
clustering <- as.integer(attr(face, "grouping"))
distcritmulti(face, clustering, ns=3, seed=100000, criterion="pearsongamma")
```

---

distrsimilarity      *Similarity of within-cluster distributions to normal and uniform*

---

### Description

Two measures of dissimilarity between the within-cluster distributions of a dataset and normal or uniform distribution. For the normal it's the Kolmogorov dissimilarity between the Mahalanobis distances to the center and a chi-squared distribution. For the uniform it is the Kolmogorov distance between the distance to the  $k$ th nearest neighbour and a Gamma distribution (this is based on Byers and Raftery (1998)). The clusterwise values are aggregated by weighting with the cluster sizes.

### Usage

```
distrsimilarity(x,clustering,noisecluster = FALSE,
distribution=c("normal", "uniform"),nnk=2,
largeisgood=FALSE,messages=FALSE)
```

### Arguments

<code>x</code>	the data matrix; a numerical object which can be coerced to a matrix.
<code>clustering</code>	integer vector of class numbers; length must equal <code>nrow(x)</code> , numbers must go from 1 to the number of clusters.
<code>noisecluster</code>	logical. If TRUE, the cluster with the largest number is ignored for the computations.
<code>distribution</code>	vector of "normal", "uniform" or both. Indicates which of the two dissimilarities is/are computed.
<code>nnk</code>	integer. Number of nearest neighbors to use for dissimilarity to the uniform.
<code>largeisgood</code>	logical. If TRUE, dissimilarities are transformed to 1-d (this means that larger values indicate a better fit).
<code>messages</code>	logical. If TRUE, warnings are given if within-cluster covariance matrices are not invertible (in which case all within-cluster Mahalanobis distances are set to zero).

### Value

List with the following components

<code>kdnorm</code>	Kolmogorov distance between distribution of within-cluster Mahalanobis distances and appropriate chi-squared distribution, aggregated over clusters (I am grateful to Agustin Mayo-Iscar for the idea).
<code>kdunif</code>	Kolmogorov distance between distribution of distances to $nnk$ th nearest within-cluster neighbor and appropriate Gamma-distribution, see Byers and Raftery (1998), aggregated over clusters.
<code>kdnormc</code>	vector of cluster-wise Kolmogorov distances between distribution of within-cluster Mahalanobis distances and appropriate chi-squared distribution.



kdunifc	vector of cluster-wise Kolmogorov distances between distribution of distances to nnkth nearest within-cluster neighbor and appropriate Gamma-distribution.
xmahal	vector of Mahalanobis distances to the respective cluster center.
xdknn	vector of distance to nnkth nearest within-cluster neighbor.

**Note**

It is very hard to capture similarity to a multivariate normal or uniform in a single value, and both used here have their shortcomings. Particularly, the dissimilarity to the uniform can still indicate a good fit if there are holes or it's a uniform distribution concentrated on several not connected sets.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Byers, S. and Raftery, A. E. (1998) Nearest-Neighbor Clutter Removal for Estimating Features in Spatial Point Processes, *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 93, 577-584.

Hennig, C. (2017) Cluster validation by measurement of clustering characteristics relevant to the user. In C. H. Skiadas (ed.) *Proceedings of ASMDA 2017*, 501-520, <https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.09282>

**See Also**

[cqcluster.stats](#), [cluster.stats](#) for more cluster validity statistics.

**Examples**

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(200,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0,p=2)
km3 <- kmeans(face,3)
distrsimilarity(face,km3$cluster)
```

---

dridgeline

*Density along the ridgeline*


---

**Description**

Computes the density of a two-component Gaussian mixture along the ridgeline (Ray and Lindsay, 2005), along which all its density extrema are located.

**Usage**

```
dridgeline(alpha=seq(0,1,0.001), prop,
           mu1, mu2, Sigma1, Sigma2, showplot=FALSE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

alpha	sequence of values between 0 and 1 for which the density is computed.
prop	mixture proportion of first component.
mu1	mean vector of component 1.
mu2	mean vector of component 2.
Sigma1	covariance matrix of component 1.
Sigma2	covariance matrix of component 2.
showplot	logical. If TRUE, the density is plotted against alpha.
...	further arguments to be passed on to plot.

**Value**

Vector of density values for values of alpha.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Ray, S. and Lindsay, B. G. (2005) The Topography of Multivariate Normal Mixtures, *Annals of Statistics*, 33, 2042-2065.

**Examples**

```
q <- dridgeline(seq(0,1,0.1),0.5,c(1,1),c(2,5),diag(2),diag(2))
```

---

dudahart2

*Duda-Hart test for splitting*

---

**Description**

Duda-Hart test for whether a data set should be split into two clusters.

**Usage**

```
dudahart2(x,clustering,alpha=0.001)
```

**Arguments**

x	data matrix or data frame.
clustering	vector of integers. Clustering into two clusters.
alpha	numeric between 0 and 1. Significance level (recommended to be small if this is used for estimating the number of clusters).

**Value**

A list with components

p.value	p-value against null hypothesis of homogeneity.
dh	ratio of within-cluster sum of squares for two clusters and overall sum of squares.
compare	critical value for dh at level alpha.
cluster1	FALSE if the null hypothesis of homogeneity is rejected.
alpha	see above.
z	1-alpha-quantile of a standard Gaussian.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en>

**References**

Duda, R. O. and Hart, P. E. (1973) *Pattern Classification and Scene Analysis*. Wiley, New York.

**See Also**

[cluster.stats](#)

**Examples**

```
options(digits=2)
set.seed(98765)
iriss <- iris[sample(150,20),-5]
km <- kmeans(iriss,2)
dudahart2(iriss,km$cluster)
```

---

extract.mixturepars     *Extract parameters for certain components from mclust*

---

**Description**

Extracts parameters of certain mixture components from the output of [summary.mclustBIC](#) and updates proportions so that they sum up to 1.

**Usage**

```
extract.mixturepars(mclustsum, compnumbers, noise=FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

mclustsum	output object of <a href="#">summary.mclustBIC</a> .
compnumbers	vector of integers. Numbers of mixture components.
noise	logical. Should be TRUE if a noise component was fitted by <a href="#">mclustBIC</a> .

**Value**

Object as component parameters of `summary.mclustBIC`-output, but for specified components only. (Orientation information from all components is kept.)

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**Examples**

```
set.seed(98765)
require(mclust)
iriss <- iris[sample(150,20),-5]
irisBIC <- mclustBIC(iriss,G=5,modelNames="VEV")
siriss <- summary(irisBIC,iriss)
emp <- extract.mixturepars(siriss,2)
emp$pro
round(emp$mean,digits=1)
emp$variance$modelName
round(emp$variance$scale,digits=2)
```

---

findrep

*Finding representatives for cluster border*

---

**Description**

Finds representative objects for the border of a cluster and the within-cluster variance as defined in the framework of the `cdbw` cluster validation index (and meant to be used in that context).

**Usage**

```
findrep(x,xcen,clustering,cluster,r,p=ncol(x),n=nrow(x),
        nc=sum(clustering==cluster))
```

**Arguments**

<code>x</code>	matrix. Euclidean dataset.
<code>xcen</code>	mean vector of cluster.
<code>clustering</code>	vector of integers with length =nrow(x); indicating the cluster for each observation.
<code>cluster</code>	integer. Number of cluster to be treated.
<code>r</code>	integer. Number of representatives.
<code>p</code>	integer. Number of dimensions.
<code>n</code>	integer. Number of observations.
<code>nc</code>	integer. Number of observations in cluster.

**Value**

List with components

repc	vector of index of representatives (out of all observations).
repx	vector of index of representatives (out of only the observations in cluster).
maxr	number of representatives (this can be smaller than r if fewer pairwise different observations are in cluster).
wvar	estimated average within-cluster squared distance to mean.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Halkidi, M. and Vazirgiannis, M. (2008) A density-based cluster validity approach using multi-representatives. *Pattern Recognition Letters* 29, 773-786.

Halkidi, M., Vazirgiannis, M. and Hennig, C. (2015) Method-independent indices for cluster validation. In C. Hennig, M. Meila, F. Murtagh, R. Rocci (eds.) *Handbook of Cluster Analysis*, CRC Press/Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton.

**See Also**

[cdbw](#)

**Examples**

```
options(digits=3)
iriss <- as.matrix(iris[c(1:5,51:55,101:105),-5])
irisc <- as.numeric(iris[c(1:5,51:55,101:105),5])
findrep(iriss,colMeans(iriss),irisc,cluster=1,r=2)
```

---

fixmahal

*Mahalanobis Fixed Point Clusters*

---

**Description**

Computes Mahalanobis fixed point clusters (FPCs), i.e., subsets of the data, which consist exactly of the non-outliers w.r.t. themselves, and may be interpreted as generated from a homogeneous normal population. FPCs may overlap, are not necessarily exhausting and do not need a specification of the number of clusters.

Note that while `fixmahal` has lots of parameters, only one (or few) of them have usually to be specified, cf. the examples. The philosophy is to allow much flexibility, but to always provide sensible defaults.

**Usage**

```

fixmahal(dat, n = nrow(as.matrix(dat)), p = ncol(as.matrix(dat)),
         method = "fuzzy", cgen = "fixed",
         ca = NA, ca2 = NA,
         calpha = ifelse(method=="fuzzy",0.95,0.99),
         calpha2 = 0.995,
         pointit = TRUE, subset = n,
         nc1 = 100+20*p,
         startn = 18+p, mnc = floor(startn/2),
         mer = ifelse(pointit,0.1,0),
         distcut = 0.85, maxit = 5*n, iter = n*1e-5,
         init.group = list(),
         ind.storage = TRUE, countmode = 100,
         plot = "none")

## S3 method for class 'mfpc'
summary(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'summary.mfpc'
print(x, maxnc=30, ...)

## S3 method for class 'mfpc'
plot(x, dat, no, bw=FALSE, main=c("Representative FPC No. ",no),
     xlab=NULL, ylab=NULL,
     pch=NULL, col=NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class 'mfpc'
fpclusters(object, dat=NA, ca=object$ca, p=object$p, ...)

fpmi(dat, n = nrow(as.matrix(dat)), p = ncol(as.matrix(dat)),
     gv, ca, ca2, method = "ml", plot,
     maxit = 5*n, iter = n*1e-6)

```

**Arguments**

<code>dat</code>	something that can be coerced to a numerical matrix or vector. Data matrix, rows are points, columns are variables. <code>fpclusters.rfpc</code> does not need specification of <code>dat</code> if <code>fixmahal</code> has been run with <code>ind.storage=TRUE</code> .
<code>n</code>	optional positive integer. Number of cases.
<code>p</code>	optional positive integer. Number of independent variables.
<code>method</code>	a string. <code>method="classical"</code> means 0-1 weighting of observations by Mahalanobis distances and use of the classical normal covariance estimator. <code>method="ml"</code> uses the ML-covariance estimator (division by $n$ instead of $n-1$ ) This is used in Hennig and Christlieb (2002). <code>method</code> can also be <code>"mcd"</code> or <code>"mve"</code> , to enforce the use of robust centers and covariance matrices, see <a href="#">cov.rob</a> . This is experimental, not recommended at the moment, may be very slowly and requires

library `lqs`. The default is `method="fuzzy"`, where weighted means and covariance matrices are used (Hennig, 2005). The weights are computed by `wfu`, i.e., a function that is constant 1 for arguments smaller than `ca`, 0 for arguments larger than `ca2` and continuously linear in between. Convergence is only proven for `method="ml"` up to now.

<code>cgen</code>	optional string. "fixed" means that the same tuning constant <code>ca</code> is used for all iterations. "auto" means that <code>ca</code> is generated dependently on the size of the current data subset in each iteration by <code>cmahal</code> . This is experimental.
<code>ca</code>	optional positive number. Tuning constant, specifying required cluster separation. By default determined as <code>calpha</code> -quantile of the chisquared distribution with <code>p</code> degrees of freedom.
<code>ca2</code>	optional positive number. Second tuning constant needed if <code>method="fuzzy"</code> . By default determined as <code>calpha2</code> -quantile of the chisquared distribution with <code>p</code> degrees of freedom.
<code>calpha</code>	number between 0 and 1. See <code>ca</code> .
<code>calpha2</code>	number between 0 and 1, larger than <code>calpha</code> . See <code>ca2</code> .
<code>pointit</code>	optional logical. If TRUE, subset fixed point algorithms are started from initial configurations, which are built around single points of the dataset, cf. <code>mahalconf</code> . Otherwise, initial configurations are only specified by <code>init.group</code> .
<code>subset</code>	optional positive integer smaller or equal than <code>n</code> . Initial configurations for the fixed point algorithm (cf. <code>mahalconf</code> ) are built from a subset of <code>subset</code> points from the data. No effect if <code>pointit=FALSE</code> . Default: all points.
<code>nc1</code>	optional positive integer. Tuning constant needed by <code>cmahal</code> to generate <code>ca</code> automatically. Only needed for <code>cgen="auto"</code> .
<code>startn</code>	optional positive integer. Size of the initial configurations. The default value is chosen to prevent that small meaningless FPCs are found, but it should be decreased if clusters of size smaller than the default value are of interest.
<code>mnc</code>	optional positive integer. Minimum size of clusters to be reported.
<code>mer</code>	optional nonnegative number. FPCs (groups of them, respectively, see details) are only reported as stable if the ratio of the number of their findings to their number of points exceeds <code>mer</code> . This holds under <code>pointit=TRUE</code> and <code>subset=n</code> . For <code>subset&lt;n</code> , the ratio is adjusted, but for small <code>subset</code> , the results may extremely vary and have to be taken with care.
<code>distcut</code>	optional value between 0 and 1. A similarity measure between FPCs, given in Hennig (2002), and the corresponding Single Linkage groups of FPCs with similarity larger than <code>distcut</code> are computed. A single representative FPC is selected for each group.
<code>maxit</code>	optional integer. Maximum number of iterations per algorithm run (usually an FPC is found much earlier).
<code>iter</code>	positive number. Algorithm stops when difference between subsequent weight vectors is smaller than <code>iter</code> . Only needed for <code>method="fuzzy"</code> .
<code>init.group</code>	optional list of logical vectors of length <code>n</code> . Every vector indicates a starting configuration for the fixed point algorithm. This can be used for datasets with high dimension, where the vectors of <code>init.group</code> indicate cluster candidates found

	by graphical inspection or background knowledge, as in Hennig and Christlieb (2002).
<code>ind.storage</code>	optional logical. If TRUE, then all indicator vectors of found FPCs are given in the value of <code>fixmahal</code> . May need lots of memory, but is a bit faster.
<code>countmode</code>	optional positive integer. Every <code>countmode</code> algorithm runs <code>fixmahal</code> shows a message.
<code>plot</code>	optional string. If "start", you get a scatterplot of the first two variables to highlight the initial configuration, "iteration" generates such a plot at each iteration, "both" does both (this may be very time consuming). The default is "none".
<code>object</code>	object of class <code>mfp</code> , output of <code>fixmahal</code> .
<code>x</code>	object of class <code>mfp</code> , output of <code>fixmahal</code> .
<code>maxnc</code>	positive integer. Maximum number of FPCs to be reported.
<code>no</code>	positive integer. Number of the representative FPC to be plotted.
<code>bw</code>	optional logical. If TRUE, plot is black/white, FPC is indicated by different symbol. Else FPC is indicated red.
<code>main</code>	plot title.
<code>xlab</code>	label for x-axis. If NULL, a default text is used.
<code>ylab</code>	label for y-axis. If NULL, a default text is used.
<code>pch</code>	plotting symbol, see <code>par</code> . If NULL, the default is used.
<code>col</code>	plotting color, see <code>par</code> . If NULL, the default is used.
<code>gv</code>	logical vector (or, with <code>method="fuzzy"</code> , vector of weights between 0 and 1) of length <code>n</code> . Indicates the initial configuration for the fixed point algorithm.
<code>...</code>	additional parameters to be passed to <code>plot</code> (no effects elsewhere).

## Details

A (crisp) Mahalanobis FPC is a data subset that reproduces itself under the following operation: Compute mean and covariance matrix estimator for the data subset, and compute all points of the dataset for which the squared Mahalanobis distance is smaller than `ca`.

Fixed points of this operation can be considered as clusters, because they contain only non-outliers (as defined by the above mentioned procedure) and all other points are outliers w.r.t. the subset.

The current default is to compute fuzzy Mahalanobis FPCs, where the points in the subset have a membership weight between 0 and 1 and give rise to weighted means and covariance matrices. The new weights are then obtained by computing the weight function `wfu` of the squared Mahalanobis distances, i.e., full weight for squared distances smaller than `ca`, zero weight for squared distances larger than `ca2` and decreasing weights (linear function of squared distances) in between.

A fixed point algorithm is started from the whole dataset, algorithms are started from the subsets specified in `init.group`, and further algorithms are started from further initial configurations as explained under `subset` and in the function `mahalconf`.

Usually some of the FPCs are unstable, and more than one FPC may correspond to the same significant pattern in the data. Therefore the number of FPCs is reduced: A similarity matrix is computed between FPCs. Similarity between sets is defined as the ratio between 2 times size of intersection and the sum of sizes of both sets. The Single Linkage clusters (groups) of level `distcut` are



computed, i.e. the connectivity components of the graph where edges are drawn between FPCs with similarity larger than `distcut`. Groups of FPCs whose members are found often enough (cf. parameter `mer`) are considered as stable enough. A representative FPC is chosen for every Single Linkage cluster of FPCs according to the maximum expectation ratio `ser`. `ser` is the ratio between the number of findings of an FPC and the number of points of an FPC, adjusted suitably if `subset < n`. Usually only the representative FPCs of stable groups are of interest.

Default tuning constants are taken from Hennig (2005).

Generally, the default settings are recommended for `fixmahal`. For large datasets, the use of `init.group` together with `pointit=FALSE` is useful. Occasionally, `mnc` and `startn` may be chosen smaller than the default, if smaller clusters are of interest, but this may lead to too many clusters. Decrease of `ca` will often lead to too many clusters, even for homogeneous data. Increase of `ca` will produce only very strongly separated clusters. Both may be of interest occasionally.

Singular covariance matrices during the iterations are handled by `solvecov`.

`summary.mfpc` gives a summary about the representative FPCs of stable groups.

`plot.mfpc` is a plot method for the representative FPC of stable group `no`. It produces a scatterplot, where the points belonging to the FPC are highlighted, the mean is and for  $p < 3$  also the region of the FPC is shown. For  $p \geq 3$ , the optimal separating projection computed by `batcoord` is shown.

`fpcclusters.mfpc` produces a list of indicator vectors for the representative FPCs of stable groups.

`fpmi` is called by `fixmahal` for a single fixed point algorithm and will usually not be executed alone.

## Value

`fixmahal` returns an object of class `mfpc`. This is a list containing the components `nc`, `g`, `means`, `covs`, `nfound`, `er`, `tsc`, `ncoll`, `skc`, `grto`, `imatrix`, `smatrix`, `stn`, `stfound`, `ser`, `sfpc`, `ssig`, `sto`, `struc`, `n`, `p`, `method`, `cgen`, `ca`, `ca2`, `cvec`, `calpha`, `pointit`, `subset`, `mnc`, `startn`, `mer`, `distcut`.

`summary.mfpc` returns an object of class `summary.mfpc`. This is a list containing the components `means`, `covs`, `stn`, `stfound`, `sn`, `ser`, `tskip`, `skc`, `tsc`, `sim`, `ca`, `ca2`, `calpha`, `mer`, `method`, `cgen`, `pointit`.

`fpcclusters.mfpc` returns a list of indicator vectors for the representative FPCs of stable groups.

`fpmi` returns a list with the components `mg`, `covg`, `md`, `gv`, `coll`, `method`, `ca`.

<code>nc</code>	integer. Number of FPCs.
<code>g</code>	list of logical vectors. Indicator vectors of FPCs. FALSE if <code>ind.storage=FALSE</code> .
<code>means</code>	list of numerical vectors. Means of FPCs. In <code>summary.mfpc</code> , only for representative FPCs of stable groups and sorted according to <code>ser</code> .
<code>covs</code>	list of numerical matrices. Covariance matrices of FPCs. In <code>summary.mfpc</code> , only for representative FPCs of stable groups and sorted according to <code>ser</code> .
<code>nfound</code>	vector of integers. Number of findings for the FPCs.
<code>er</code>	numerical vector. Ratio of number of findings of FPCs to their size. Under <code>pointit=TRUE</code> , this can be taken as a measure of stability of FPCs.
<code>tsc</code>	integer. Number of algorithm runs leading to too small or too seldom found FPCs.

<code>ncoll</code>	integer. Number of algorithm runs where collinear covariance matrices occurred.
<code>skc</code>	integer. Number of skipped clusters.
<code>grto</code>	vector of integers. Numbers of FPCs to which algorithm runs led, which were started by <code>init.group</code> .
<code>imatrix</code>	vector of integers. Size of intersection between FPCs. See <a href="#">sseg</a> .
<code>smatrix</code>	numerical vector. Similarities between FPCs. See <a href="#">sseg</a> .
<code>stn</code>	integer. Number of representative FPCs of stable groups. In <code>summary.mfpc</code> , sorted according to <code>ser</code> .
<code>stfound</code>	vector of integers. Number of findings of members of all groups of FPCs. In <code>summary.mfpc</code> , sorted according to <code>ser</code> .
<code>ser</code>	numerical vector. Ratio of number of findings of groups of FPCs to their size. Under <code>pointit=TRUE</code> , this can be taken as a measure of stability of FPCs. In <code>summary.mfpc</code> , sorted from largest to smallest.
<code>sfpc</code>	vector of integers. Numbers of representative FPCs of all groups.
<code>ssig</code>	vector of integers of length <code>stn</code> . Numbers of representative FPCs of the stable groups.
<code>sto</code>	vector of integers. Numbers of groups ordered according to largest <code>ser</code> .
<code>struc</code>	vector of integers. Number of group an FPC belongs to.
<code>n</code>	see arguments.
<code>p</code>	see arguments.
<code>method</code>	see arguments.
<code>cgen</code>	see arguments.
<code>ca</code>	see arguments, if <code>cgen</code> has been "fixed". Else numerical vector of length <code>nc</code> (see below), giving the final values of <code>ca</code> for all FPC. In <code>fpmi</code> , tuning constant for the iterated FPC.
<code>ca2</code>	see arguments.
<code>cvec</code>	numerical vector of length <code>n</code> for <code>cgen="auto"</code> . The values for the tuning constant <code>ca</code> corresponding to the cluster sizes from 1 to <code>n</code> .
<code>calpha</code>	see arguments.
<code>pointit</code>	see arguments.
<code>subset</code>	see arguments.
<code>mnc</code>	see arguments.
<code>startn</code>	see arguments.
<code>mer</code>	see arguments.
<code>distcut</code>	see arguments.
<code>sn</code>	vector of integers. Number of points of representative FPCs.
<code>tskip</code>	integer. Number of algorithm runs leading to skipped FPCs.
<code>sim</code>	vector of integers. Size of intersections between representative FPCs of stable groups. See <a href="#">sseg</a> .

mg	mean vector.
covg	covariance matrix.
md	Mahalanobis distances.
gv	logical (numerical, respectively, if method="fuzzy") indicator vector of iterated FPC.
coll	logical. TRUE means that singular covariance matrices occurred during the iterations.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### References

Hennig, C. (2002) Fixed point clusters for linear regression: computation and comparison, *Journal of Classification* 19, 249-276.

Hennig, C. (2005) Fuzzy and Crisp Mahalanobis Fixed Point Clusters, in Baier, D., Decker, R., and Schmidt-Thieme, L. (eds.): *Data Analysis and Decision Support*. Springer, Heidelberg, 47-56.

Hennig, C. and Christlieb, N. (2002) Validating visual clusters in large datasets: Fixed point clusters of spectral features, *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis* 40, 723-739.

### See Also

[fixreg](#) for linear regression fixed point clusters.

[mahalconf](#), [wfu](#), [cmahal](#) for computation of initial configurations, weights, tuning constants.

[sseg](#) for indexing the similarity/intersection vectors computed by `fixmahal`.

[batcoord](#), [cov.rob](#), [solvecov](#), [cov.wml](#), [plotcluster](#) for computation of projections, (inverted) covariance matrices, plotting.

[rFace](#) for generation of example data, see below.

### Examples

```
options(digits=2)
set.seed(20000)
face <- rFace(400,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0, p=3)
# The first example uses grouping information via init.group.
initg <- list()
grface <- as.integer(attr(face,"grouping"))
for (i in 1:5) initg[[i]] <- (grface==i)
ff0 <- fixmahal(face, pointit=FALSE, init.group=initg)
summary(ff0)
cff0 <- fpclusters(ff0)
plot(face, col=1+cff0[[1]])
plot(face, col=1+cff0[[4]]) # Why does this come out as a cluster?
plot(ff0, face, 4) # A bit clearer...
# Without grouping information, examples need more time:
```

```

# ff1 <- fixmahal(face)
# summary(ff1)
# cff1 <- fpclusters(ff1)
# plot(face, col=1+cff1[[1]])
# plot(face, col=1+cff1[[6]]) # Why does this come out as a cluster?
# plot(ff1, face, 6) # A bit clearer...
# ff2 <- fixmahal(face,method="ml")
# summary(ff2)
# ff3 <- fixmahal(face,method="ml",calpha=0.95,subset=50)
# summary(ff3)
## ...fast, but lots of clusters. mer=0.3 may be useful here.
# set.seed(3000)
# face2 <- rFace(400,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0)
# ff5 <- fixmahal(face2)
# summary(ff5)
## misses right eye of face data; with p=6,
## initial configurations are too large for 40 point clusters
# ff6 <- fixmahal(face2, startn=30)
# summary(ff6)
# cff6 <- fpclusters(ff6)
# plot(face2, col=1+cff6[[3]])
# plot(ff6, face2, 3)
# x <- c(1,2,3,6,6,7,8,120)
# ff8 <- fixmahal(x)
# summary(ff8)
# ...dataset a bit too small for the defaults...
# ff9 <- fixmahal(x, mnc=3, startn=3)
# summary(ff9)

```

---

fixreg

---

*Linear Regression Fixed Point Clusters*


---

## Description

Computes linear regression fixed point clusters (FPCs), i.e., subsets of the data, which consist exactly of the non-outliers w.r.t. themselves, and may be interpreted as generated from a homogeneous linear regression relation between independent and dependent variable. FPCs may overlap, are not necessarily exhausting and do not need a specification of the number of clusters.

Note that while `fixreg` has lots of parameters, only one (or few) of them have usually to be specified, cf. the examples. The philosophy is to allow much flexibility, but to always provide sensible defaults.

## Usage

```

fixreg(indep=rep(1,n), dep, n=length(dep),
      p=ncol(as.matrix(indep)),
      ca=NA, mnc=NA, mtf=3, ir=NA, irnc=NA,
      irprob=0.95, mncprob=0.5, maxir=20000, maxit=5*n,
      distcut=0.85, init.group=list(),

```

```

        ind.storage=FALSE, countmode=100,
        plot=FALSE)

## S3 method for class 'rfpc'
summary(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'summary.rfpc'
print(x, maxnc=30, ...)

## S3 method for class 'rfpc'
plot(x, indep=rep(1,n), dep, no, bw=TRUE,
      main=c("Representative FPC No. ",no),
      xlab="Linear combination of independents",
      ylab=deparse(substitute(indep)),
      xlim=NULL, ylim=range(dep),
      pch=NULL, col=NULL,...)

## S3 method for class 'rfpc'
fpclusters(object, indep=NA, dep=NA, ca=object$ca, ...)

rfpi(indep, dep, p, gv, ca, maxit, plot)

```

### Arguments

<code>indep</code>	numerical matrix or vector. Independent variables. Leave out for clustering one-dimensional data. <code>fpclusters.rfpc</code> does not need specification of <code>indep</code> if <code>fixreg</code> was run with <code>ind.storage=TRUE</code> .
<code>dep</code>	numerical vector. Dependent variable. <code>fpclusters.rfpc</code> does not need specification of <code>dep</code> if <code>fixreg</code> was run with <code>ind.storage=TRUE</code> .
<code>n</code>	optional positive integer. Number of cases.
<code>p</code>	optional positive integer. Number of independent variables.
<code>ca</code>	optional positive number. Tuning constant, specifying required cluster separation. By default determined automatically as a function of <code>n</code> and <code>p</code> , see function <a href="#">can</a> , Hennig (2002a).
<code>mnc</code>	optional positive integer. Minimum size of clusters to be reported. By default determined automatically as a function of <code>mncprob</code> . See Hennig (2002a).
<code>mtf</code>	optional positive integer. FPCs must be found at least <code>mtf</code> times to be reported by <code>summary.rfpc</code> .
<code>ir</code>	optional positive integer. Number of algorithm runs. By default determined automatically as a function of <code>n</code> , <code>p</code> , <code>irnc</code> , <code>irprob</code> , <code>mtf</code> , <code>maxir</code> . See function <a href="#">itnumber</a> and Hennig (2002a).
<code>irnc</code>	optional positive integer. Size of the smallest cluster to be found with approximated probability <code>irprob</code> .
<code>irprob</code>	optional value between 0 and 1. Approximated probability for a cluster of size <code>irnc</code> to be found.

mncprob	optional value between 0 and 1. Approximated probability for a cluster of size mnc to be found.
maxir	optional integer. Maximum number of algorithm runs.
maxit	optional integer. Maximum number of iterations per algorithm run (usually an FPC is found much earlier).
distcut	optional value between 0 and 1. A similarity measure between FPCs, given in Hennig (2002a), and the corresponding Single Linkage groups of FPCs with similarity larger than distcut are computed. A single representative FPC is selected for each group.
init.group	optional list of logical vectors of length n. Every vector indicates a starting configuration for the fixed point algorithm. This can be used for datasets with high dimension, where the vectors of init.group indicate cluster candidates found by graphical inspection or background knowledge.
ind.storage	optional logical. If TRUE, then all indicator vectors of found FPCs are given in the value of fixreg. May need lots of memory, but is a bit faster.
countmode	optional positive integer. Every countmode algorithm runs fixreg shows a message.
plot	optional logical. If TRUE, you get a scatterplot of first independent vs. dependent variable at each iteration.
object	object of class rfp, output of fixreg.
x	object of class rfp, output of fixreg.
maxnc	positive integer. Maximum number of FPCs to be reported.
no	positive integer. Number of the representative FPC to be plotted.
bw	optional logical. If TRUE, plot is black/white, FPC is indicated by different symbol. Else FPC is indicated red.
main	plot title.
xlab	label for x-axis.
ylab	label for y-axis.
xlim	plotted range of x-axis. If NULL, the range of the plotted linear combination of independent variables is used.
ylim	plotted range of y-axis.
pch	plotting symbol, see <a href="#">par</a> . If NULL, the default is used.
col	plotting color, see <a href="#">par</a> . If NULL, the default is used.
gv	logical vector of length n. Indicates the initial configuration for the fixed point algorithm.
...	additional parameters to be passed to plot (no effects elsewhere).

### Details

A linear regression FPC is a data subset that reproduces itself under the following operation: Compute linear regression and error variance estimator for the data subset, and compute all points of the dataset for which the squared residual is smaller than  $ca$  times the error variance.

Fixed points of this operation can be considered as clusters, because they contain only non-outliers (as defined by the above mentioned procedure) and all other points are outliers w.r.t. the subset. `fixreg` performs `ir` fixed point algorithms started from random subsets of size  $p+2$  to look for FPCs. Additionally an algorithm is started from the whole dataset, and algorithms are started from the subsets specified in `init.group`.

Usually some of the FPCs are unstable, and more than one FPC may correspond to the same significant pattern in the data. Therefore the number of FPCs is reduced: FPCs with less than `mnc` points are ignored. Then a similarity matrix is computed between the remaining FPCs. Similarity between sets is defined as the ratio between 2 times size of intersection and the sum of sizes of both sets. The Single Linkage clusters (groups) of level `distcut` are computed, i.e. the connectivity components of the graph where edges are drawn between FPCs with similarity larger than `distcut`. Groups of FPCs whose members are found `mtf` times or more are considered as stable enough. A representative FPC is chosen for every Single Linkage cluster of FPCs according to the maximum expectation ratio `ser`. `ser` is the ratio between the number of findings of an FPC and the estimated expectation of the number of findings of an FPC of this size, called *expectation ratio* and computed by `clusexpect`.

Usually only the representative FPCs of stable groups are of interest.

The choice of the involved tuning constants such as `ca` and `ir` is discussed in detail in Hennig (2002a). Statistical theory is presented in Hennig (2003).

Generally, the default settings are recommended for `fixreg`. In cases where they lead to a too large number of algorithm runs (e.g., always for  $p > 4$ ), the use of `init.group` together with `mtf=1` and `ir=0` is useful. Occasionally, `irnc` may be chosen smaller than the default, if smaller clusters are of interest, but this may lead to too many clusters and too many algorithm runs. Decrease of `ca` will often lead to too many clusters, even for homogeneous data. Increase of `ca` will produce only very strongly separated clusters. Both may be of interest occasionally.

`rfpi` is called by `fixreg` for a single fixed point algorithm and will usually not be executed alone.

`summary.rfpc` gives a summary about the representative FPCs of stable groups.

`plot.rfpc` is a plot method for the representative FPC of stable group `no`. It produces a scatterplot of the linear combination of independent variables determined by the regression coefficients of the FPC vs. the dependent variable. The regression line and the region of non-outliers determined by `ca` are plotted as well.

`fpclusters.rfpc` produces a list of indicator vectors for the representative FPCs of stable groups.

## Value

`fixreg` returns an object of class `rfpc`. This is a list containing the components `nc`, `g`, `coefs`, `vars`, `nfound`, `er`, `tsc`, `ncoll`, `grto`, `imatrix`, `smatrix`, `stn`, `stfound`, `sfpc`, `ssig`, `sto`, `struc`, `n`, `p`, `ca`, `ir`, `mnc`, `mtf`, `distcut`.

`summary.rfpc` returns an object of class `summary.rfpc`. This is a list containing the components `coefs`, `vars`, `stfound`, `stn`, `sn`, `ser`, `tsc`, `sim`, `ca`, `ir`, `mnc`, `mtf`.

`fpclusters.rfpc` returns a list of indicator vectors for the representative FPCs of stable groups.

`rfpi` returns a list with the components `coef`, `var`, `g`, `coll`, `ca`.

<code>nc</code>	integer. Number of FPCs.
<code>g</code>	list of logical vectors. Indicator vectors of FPCs. FALSE if <code>ind.storage=FALSE</code> .
<code>coefs</code>	list of numerical vectors. Regression coefficients of FPCs. In <code>summary.rfpc</code> , only for representative FPCs of stable groups and sorted according to <code>stfound</code> .

vars	list of numbers. Error variances of FPCs. In <code>summary.rfpc</code> , only for representative FPCs of stable groups and sorted according to <code>stfound</code> .
nfound	vector of integers. Number of findings for the FPCs.
er	numerical vector. Expectation ratios of FPCs. Can be taken as a stability measure.
tsc	integer. Number of algorithm runs leading to too small or too seldom found FPCs.
ncoll	integer. Number of algorithm runs where collinear regressor matrices occurred.
grto	vector of integers. Numbers of FPCs to which algorithm runs led, which were started by <code>init.group</code> .
imatrix	vector of integers. Size of intersection between FPCs. See <a href="#">sseg</a> .
smatrix	numerical vector. Similarities between FPCs. See <a href="#">sseg</a> .
stn	integer. Number of representative FPCs of stable groups. In <code>summary.rfpc</code> sorted according to <code>stfound</code> .
stfound	vector of integers. Number of findings of members of all groups of FPCs. In <code>summary.rfpc</code> sorted according to <code>stfound</code> .
sfpc	vector of integers. Numbers of representative FPCs.
ssig	vector of integers. As <code>sfpc</code> , but only for stable groups.
sto	vector of integers. Number of representative FPC of most, 2nd most, ..., often found group of FPCs.
struc	vector of integers. Number of group an FPC belongs to.
n	see arguments.
p	see arguments.
ca	see arguments.
ir	see arguments.
mnc	see arguments.
mtf	see arguments.
distcut	see arguments.
sn	vector of integers. Number of points of representative FPCs.
ser	numerical vector. Expectation ratio for stable groups.
sim	vector of integers. Size of intersections between representative FPCs of stable groups. See <a href="#">sseg</a> .
coef	vector of regression coefficients.
var	error variance.
g	logical indicator vector of iterated FPC.
coll	logical. TRUE means that singular covariance matrices occurred during the iterations.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>



## References

Hennig, C. (2002) Fixed point clusters for linear regression: computation and comparison, *Journal of Classification* 19, 249-276.

Hennig, C. (2003) Clusters, outliers and regression: fixed point clusters, *Journal of Multivariate Analysis* 86, 183-212.

## See Also

[fixmahal](#) for fixed point clusters in the usual setup (non-regression).

[regmix](#) for clusterwise linear regression by mixture modeling ML.

[can](#), [itnumber](#) for computation of the default settings.

[clusexpect](#) for estimation of the expected number of findings of an FPC of given size.

[itnumber](#) for the generation of the number of fixed point algorithms.

[minsize](#) for the smallest FPC size to be found with a given probability..

[sseg](#) for indexing the similarity/intersection vectors computed by `fixreg`.

## Examples

```
set.seed(190000)
options(digits=3)
data(tonedata)
attach(tonedata)
tonefix <- fixreg(stretchratio,tuned,mtf=1,ir=20)
summary(tonefix)
# This is designed to have a fast example; default setting would be better.
# If you want to see more (and you have a bit more time),
# try out the following:
## Not run:
  set.seed(1000)
  tonefix <- fixreg(stretchratio,tuned)
# Default - good for these data
summary(tonefix)
plot(tonefix,stretchratio,tuned,1)
plot(tonefix,stretchratio,tuned,2)
plot(tonefix,stretchratio,tuned,3,bw=FALSE,pch=5)
toneclus <- fpclusters(tonefix,stretchratio,tuned)
plot(stretchratio,tuned,col=1+toneclus[[2]])
tonefix2 <- fixreg(stretchratio,tuned,distcut=1,mtf=1,countmode=50)
# Every found fixed point cluster is reported,
# no matter how instable it may be.
summary(tonefix2)
tonefix3 <- fixreg(stretchratio,tuned,ca=7)
# ca defaults to 10.07 for these data.
summary(tonefix3)
subset <- c(rep(FALSE,5),rep(TRUE,24),rep(FALSE,121))
tonefix4 <- fixreg(stretchratio,tuned,
                  mtf=1,ir=0,init.group=list(subset))
summary(tonefix4)
```

```
## End(Not run)
```

---

```
flexmixedruns
```

```
Fitting mixed Gaussian/multinomial mixtures with flexmix
```

---

## Description

flexmixedruns fits a latent class mixture (clustering) model where some variables are continuous and modelled within the mixture components by Gaussian distributions and some variables are categorical and modelled within components by independent multinomial distributions. The fit is by maximum likelihood estimation computed with the EM-algorithm. The number of components can be estimated by the BIC.

Note that at least one categorical variable is needed, but it is possible to use data without continuous variable.

## Usage

```
flexmixedruns(x,diagonal=TRUE,xvarsorted=TRUE,
              continuous,discrete,ppdim=NULL,initial.cluster=NULL,
              simruns=20,n.cluster=1:20,verbose=TRUE,recode=TRUE,
              allout=TRUE,control=list(minprior=0.001),silent=TRUE)
```

## Arguments

x	data matrix or data frame. The data need to be organised case-wise, i.e., if there are categorical variables only, and 15 cases with values c(1,1,2) on the 3 variables, the data matrix needs 15 rows with values 1 1 2. (Categorical variables could take numbers or strings or anything that can be coerced to factor levels as values.)
diagonal	logical. If TRUE, Gaussian models are fitted restricted to diagonal covariance matrices. Otherwise, covariance matrices are unrestricted. TRUE is consistent with the "within class independence" assumption for the multinomial variables.
xvarsorted	logical. If TRUE, the continuous variables are assumed to be the first ones, and the categorical variables to be behind them.
continuous	vector of integers giving positions of the continuous variables. If xvarsorted=TRUE, a single integer, number of continuous variables.
discrete	vector of integers giving positions of the categorical variables. If xvarsorted=TRUE, a single integer, number of categorical variables.
ppdim	vector of integers specifying the number of (in the data) existing categories for each categorical variable. If recode=TRUE, this can be omitted and is computed automatically.
initial.cluster	this corresponds to the cluster parameter in flexmix and should only be specified if simruns=1 and n.cluster is a single number. Either a matrix with

	n.cluster	columns of initial cluster membership probabilities for each observation; or a factor or integer vector with the initial cluster assignments of observations at the start of the EM algorithm. Default is random assignment into n.cluster clusters.
simruns	integer.	Number of starts of the EM algorithm with random initialisation in order to find a good global optimum.
n.cluster	vector of integers,	numbers of components (the optimum one is found by minimising the BIC).
verbose	logical.	If TRUE, some information about the different runs of the EM algorithm is given out.
recode	logical.	If TRUE, the function discrete.recode is applied in order to recode categorical data so that the lcmixed-method can use it. Only set this to FALSE if your data already has that format (even in that case, TRUE doesn't do harm). If recode=FALSE, the categorical variables are assumed to be coded 1,2,3,...
allout	logical.	If TRUE, the regular flexmix-output is given out for every single number of clusters, which can create a huge output object.
control	list of control parameters for flexmix,	for details see the help page of <a href="#">FLXcontrol-class</a> .
silent	logical.	This is passed on to the try-function. If FALSE, error messages from failed runs of flexmix are suppressed. (The information that a flexmix-error occurred is still given out if verbose=TRUE).

## Details

Sometimes flexmix produces errors because of degenerating covariance matrices, too small clusters etc. flexmixedruns tolerates these and treats them as non-optimal runs. (Higher simruns or different control may be required to get a valid solution.)

General documentation on flexmix can be found in Friedrich Leisch's "FlexMix: A General Framework for Finite Mixture Models and Latent Class Regression in R", <https://CRAN.R-project.org/package=flexmix>

## Value

A list with components

optsummary	summary object for flexmix object with optimal number of components.
optimalk	optimal number of components.
errcount	vector with numbers of EM runs for each number of components that led to flexmix errors.
flexout	if allout=TRUE, list of flexmix output objects for all numbers of components, for details see the help page of <a href="#">flexmix-class</a> . Slots that can be used include for example cluster and components. So if fo is the flexmixedruns-output object, fo\$flexout[[fo\$optimalk]]@cluster gives a component number vector for the observations (maximum posterior rule), and fo\$flexout[[fo\$optimalk]]@components gives the estimated model parameters, which for lcmixed and therefore flexmixedruns are called <b>center</b> mean vector

**cov** covariance matrix  
**pp** list of categorical variable-wise category probabilities  
 If `allout=FALSE`, only the flexmix output object for the optimal number of components, i.e., the `[[fo$optimalk]]` indexing above can then be omitted.

**bicvals** vector of values of the BIC for each number of components.  
**ppdim** vector of categorical variable-wise numbers of categories.  
**discretelevels** list of levels of the categorical variables belonging to what is treated by flexmixedruns as category 1, 2, 3 etc.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en>

**References**

Hennig, C. and Liao, T. (2013) How to find an appropriate clustering for mixed-type variables with application to socio-economic stratification, *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series C Applied Statistics*, 62, 309-369.

**See Also**

[lcmixed](#), [flexmix](#), [FLXcontrol-class](#), [flexmix-class](#), [discrete.recode](#).

**Examples**

```
options(digits=3)
set.seed(776655)
v1 <- rnorm(100)
v2 <- rnorm(100)
d1 <- sample(1:5,100,replace=TRUE)
d2 <- sample(1:4,100,replace=TRUE)
ldata <- cbind(v1,v2,d1,d2)
fr <- flexmixedruns(ldata,
  continuous=2,discrete=2,simruns=2,n.cluster=2:3,allout=FALSE)
print(fr$optimalk)
print(fr$optsummary)
print(fr$flexout@cluster)
print(fr$flexout@components)
```

---

fpclusters

---

*Extracting clusters from fixed point cluster objects*


---

**Description**

fpclusters is a generic function which extracts the representative fixed point clusters (FPCs) from FPC objects generated by [fixmahal](#) and [fixreg](#). For documentation and examples see [fixmahal](#) and [fixreg](#).

**Usage**

```
fpclusters(object, ...)
```

**Arguments**

object            object of class rfp or mfp.  
 ...               further arguments depending on the method.

**Value**

a list of logical or numerical vectors indicating or giving the weights of the cluster memberships.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**See Also**

[fixmahal](#), [fixreg](#)

---

itnumber	<i>Number of regression fixed point cluster iterations</i>
----------	--

---

**Description**

Computes the number of fixed point iterations needed by [fixreg](#) to find mtf times a fixed point cluster (FPC) of size cn with an approximated probability of prob.

Thought for use within [fixreg](#).

**Usage**

```
itnumber(n, p, cn, mtf, prob = 0.95, maxir = 20000)
```

**Arguments**

n                    positive integer. Total number of points.  
 p                    positive integer. Number of independent variables.  
 cn                   positive integer smaller or equal to n. Size of the FPC.  
 mtf                  positive integer.  
 prob                 number between 0 and 1.  
 maxir                positive integer. itnumber is set to this value if it would otherwise be larger.

**Details**

The computation is based on the binomial distribution with probability given by `clusexpect` with `ir=1`.

**Value**

An integer.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Hennig, C. (2002) Fixed point clusters for linear regression: computation and comparison, *Journal of Classification* 19, 249-276.

**See Also**

[fixreg](#), [clusexpect](#)

**Examples**

```
itnumber(500,4,150,2)
```

---

jittervar

*Jitter variables in a data matrix*

---

**Description**

Jitters some variables in a data matrix.

**Usage**

```
jittervar(x,jitterv=NULL,factor=1)
```

**Arguments**

`x` data matrix or data frame.  
`jitterv` vector of numbers of variables to be jittered.  
`factor` numeric. Passed on to [jitter](#). See the documentation there. The higher, the more jittering.

**Value**

data matrix or data frame with jittered variables.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en>

**See Also**

[jitter](#)

**Examples**

```
set.seed(776655)
v1 <- rnorm(20)
v2 <- rnorm(20)
d1 <- sample(1:5,20,replace=TRUE)
d2 <- sample(1:4,20,replace=TRUE)
ldata <- cbind(v1,v2,d1,d2)
jv <- jittervar(ldata,jitterv=3:4)
```

---

kmeansCBI

*Interface functions for clustering methods*


---

**Description**

These functions provide an interface to several clustering methods implemented in R, for use together with the cluster stability assessment in [clusterboot](#) (as parameter `clustermethod`; "CBI" stands for "clusterboot interface"). In some situations it could make sense to use them to compute a clustering even if you don't want to run `clusterboot`, because some of the functions contain some additional features (e.g., normal mixture model based clustering of dissimilarity matrices projected into the Euclidean space by MDS or partitioning around medoids with estimated number of clusters, noise/outlier identification in hierarchical clustering).

**Usage**

```
kmeansCBI(data,krange,k,scaling=FALSE,runs=1,criterion="ch",...)
```

```
hclustCBI(data,k,cut="number",method,scaling=TRUE,noise=0,...)
```

```
hclusttreeCBI(data,minlevel=2,method,scaling=TRUE,...)
```

```
disthclustCBI(dmatrix,k,cut="number",method,noise=0,...)
```

```
noisemclustCBI(data,G,k,modelNames,nnk,hcmodel=NULL,Vinv=NULL,
summary.out=FALSE,...)
```

```
distnoisemclustCBI(dmatrix,G,k,modelNames,nnk,
hcmodel=NULL,Vinv=NULL,mdsmethod="classical",
```

```

mdsdim=4, summary.out=FALSE, points.out=FALSE,...)

claraCBI(data,k,usepam=TRUE,diss=inherits(data,"dist"),...)

pamkCBI(data,krange=2:10,k=NULL,criterion="asw", usepam=TRUE,
        scaling=FALSE,diss=inherits(data,"dist"),...)

tclustCBI(data,k,trim=0.05,...)

dbscanCBI(data,eps,MinPts,diss=inherits(data,"dist"),...)

mahalCBI(data,clustercut=0.5,...)

mergenormCBI(data, G=NULL, k=NULL, modelNames=NULL, nnk=0,
             hcmodel = NULL,
             Vinv = NULL, mergemethod="bhat",
             cutoff=0.1,...)

speccCBI(data,k,...)

pdfclustCBI(data,...)

stupidkcentroidsCBI(dmatrix,k,distances=TRUE)

stupidknnCBI(dmatrix,k)

stupidkfnCBI(dmatrix,k)

stupidkavenCBI(dmatrix,k)

```

### Arguments

<code>data</code>	a numeric matrix. The data matrix - usually a cases*variables-data matrix. <code>claraCBI</code> , <code>pamkCBI</code> and <code>dbscanCBI</code> work with an n*n-dissimilarity matrix as well, see parameter <code>diss</code> .
<code>dmatrix</code>	a squared numerical dissimilarity matrix or a <code>dist</code> -object.
<code>k</code>	numeric, usually integer. In most cases, this is the number of clusters for methods where this is fixed. For <code>hclustCBI</code> and <code>disthclustCBI</code> see parameter <code>cut</code> below. Some methods have a <code>k</code> parameter on top of a <code>G</code> or <code>krange</code> parameter for compatibility; <code>k</code> in these cases does not have to be specified but if it is, it is always a single number of clusters and overwrites <code>G</code> and <code>krange</code> .
<code>scaling</code>	either a logical value or a numeric vector of length equal to the number of variables. If <code>scaling</code> is a numeric vector with length equal to the number of variables, then each variable is divided by the corresponding value from <code>scaling</code> . If <code>scaling</code> is <code>TRUE</code> then <code>scaling</code> is done by dividing the (centered) variables



	by their root-mean-square, and if <code>scaling</code> is <code>FALSE</code> , no scaling is done before execution.
<code>runs</code>	integer. Number of random initializations from which the k-means algorithm is started.
<code>criterion</code>	"ch" or "asw". Decides whether number of clusters is estimated by the Calinski-Harabasz criterion or by the average silhouette width.
<code>cut</code>	either "level" or "number". This determines how <code>cutree</code> is used to obtain a partition from a hierarchy tree. <code>cut="level"</code> means that the tree is cut at a particular dissimilarity level, <code>cut="number"</code> means that the tree is cut in order to obtain a fixed number of clusters. The parameter <code>k</code> specifies the number of clusters or the dissimilarity level, depending on <code>cut</code> .
<code>method</code>	method for hierarchical clustering, see the documentation of <a href="#">hclust</a> .
<code>noisecut</code>	numeric. All clusters of size $\leq$ <code>noisecut</code> in the <code>disthclustCBI/hclustCBI</code> -partition are joined and declared as noise/outliers.
<code>minlevel</code>	integer. <code>minlevel=1</code> means that all clusters in the tree are given out by <code>hclusttreeCBI</code> or <code>disthclusttreeCBI</code> , including one-point clusters (but excluding the cluster with all points). <code>minlevel=2</code> excludes the one-point clusters. <code>minlevel=3</code> excludes the two-point cluster which has been merged first, and increasing the value of <code>minlevel</code> by 1 in all further steps means that the remaining earliest formed cluster is excluded.
<code>G</code>	vector of integers. Number of clusters or numbers of clusters used by <a href="#">mclustBIC</a> . If <code>G</code> has more than one entry, the number of clusters is estimated by the BIC.
<code>modelName</code>	vector of string. Models for covariance matrices, see documentation of <a href="#">mclustBIC</a> .
<code>nnk</code>	integer. Tuning constant for <a href="#">NNclean</a> , which is used to estimate the initial noise for <code>noisemclustCBI</code> and <code>distnoisemclustCBI</code> . See parameter <code>k</code> in the documentation of <a href="#">NNclean</a> . <code>nnk=0</code> means that no noise component is fitted.
<code>hcmode</code>	string or <code>NULL</code> . Determines the initialization of the EM-algorithm for <a href="#">mclustBIC</a> . Documented in <a href="#">hc</a> .
<code>Vinv</code>	numeric. See documentation of <a href="#">mclustBIC</a> .
<code>summary.out</code>	logical. If <code>TRUE</code> , the result of <code>summary.mclustBIC</code> is added as component <code>mclustsummary</code> to the output of <code>noisemclustCBI</code> and <code>distnoisemclustCBI</code> .
<code>mdsmethod</code>	"classical", "kruskal" or "sammon". Determines the multidimensional scaling method to compute Euclidean data from a dissimilarity matrix. See <a href="#">cmdscale</a> , <a href="#">isoMDS</a> and <a href="#">sammon</a> .
<code>mdsdim</code>	integer. Dimensionality of MDS solution.
<code>points.out</code>	logical. If <code>TRUE</code> , the matrix of MDS points is added as component <code>points</code> to the output of <code>noisemclustCBI</code> .
<code>usepam</code>	logical. If <code>TRUE</code> , the function <code>pam</code> is used for clustering, otherwise <code>clara</code> . <code>pam</code> is better, <code>clara</code> is faster.
<code>diss</code>	logical. If <code>TRUE</code> , data will be considered as a dissimilarity matrix. In <code>claraCBI</code> , this requires <code>usepam=TRUE</code> .
<code>krange</code>	vector of integers. Numbers of clusters to be compared.

trim	numeric between 0 and 1. Proportion of data points trimmed, i.e., assigned to noise. See <code>tclust</code> in the <code>tclust</code> package.
eps	numeric. The radius of the neighborhoods to be considered by <code>dbscan</code> .
MinPts	integer. How many points have to be in a neighborhood so that a point is considered to be a cluster seed? See documentation of <code>dbscan</code> .
clustercut	numeric between 0 and 1. If <code>fixmahal</code> is used for fuzzy clustering, a crisp partition is generated and points with cluster membership values above <code>clustercut</code> are considered as members of the corresponding cluster.
mergemethod	method for merging Gaussians, passed on as method to <code>mergenormals</code> .
cutoff	numeric between 0 and 1, tuning constant for <code>mergenormals</code> .
distances	logical (only for <code>stupidkcentroidsCBI</code> ). If FALSE, <code>dmatrix</code> is interpreted as <code>cases&amp;variables</code> data matrix.
...	further parameters to be transferred to the original clustering functions (not required).

## Details

All these functions call clustering methods implemented in R to cluster data and to provide output in the format required by `clusterboot`. Here is a brief overview. For further details see the help pages of the involved clustering methods.

**kmeansCBI** an interface to the function `kmeansruns` calling `kmeans` for k-means clustering. (`kmeansruns` allows the specification of several random initializations of the k-means algorithm and estimation of k by the Calinski-Harabasz index or the average silhouette width.)

**hclustCBI** an interface to the function `hclust` for agglomerative hierarchical clustering with noise component (see parameter `noisecut` above). This function produces a partition and assumes a `cases*variables` matrix as input.

**hclusttreeCBI** an interface to the function `hclust` for agglomerative hierarchical clustering. This function gives out all clusters belonging to the hierarchy (upward from a certain level, see parameter `minlevel` above).

**disthclustCBI** an interface to the function `hclust` for agglomerative hierarchical clustering with noise component (see parameter `noisecut` above). This function produces a partition and assumes a dissimilarity matrix as input.

**noisemclustCBI** an interface to the function `mclustBIC`, for normal mixture model based clustering. Warning: `mclustBIC` often has problems with multiple points. In `clusterboot`, it is recommended to use this together with `multipleboot=FALSE`.

**distnoisemclustCBI** an interface to the function `mclustBIC` for normal mixture model based clustering. This assumes a dissimilarity matrix as input and generates a data matrix by multidimensional scaling first. Warning: `mclustBIC` often has problems with multiple points. In `clusterboot`, it is recommended to use this together with `multipleboot=FALSE`.

**claraCBI** an interface to the functions `pam` and `clara` for partitioning around medoids.

**pamkCBI** an interface to the function `pamk` calling `pam` for partitioning around medoids. The number of clusters is estimated by the Calinski-Harabasz index or by the average silhouette width.

- tclustCBI** an interface to the function `tclust` in the `tclust` package for trimmed Gaussian clustering. This assumes a `cases*variables` matrix as input.
- dbscanCBI** an interface to the function `dbscan` for density based clustering.
- mahalCBI** an interface to the function `fixmahal` for fixed point clustering. This assumes a `cases*variables` matrix as input.
- mergenormCBI** an interface to the function `mergenormals` for clustering by merging Gaussian mixture components. Unlike `mergenormals`, `mergenormCBI` includes the computation of the initial Gaussian mixture. This assumes a `cases*variables` matrix as input.
- speccCBI** an interface to the function `specc` for spectral clustering. See the `specc` help page for additional tuning parameters. This assumes a `cases*variables` matrix as input.
- pdfclustCBI** an interface to the function `pdfCluster` for density-based clustering. See the `pdfCluster` help page for additional tuning parameters. This assumes a `cases*variables` matrix as input.
- stupidkcentroidsCBI** an interface to the function `stupidkcentroids` for random centroid-based clustering. See the `stupidkcentroids` help page. This can have a distance matrix as well as a `cases*variables` matrix as input, see parameter `distances`.
- stupidknnCBI** an interface to the function `stupidknn` for random nearest neighbour clustering. See the `stupidknn` help page. This assumes a distance matrix as input.
- stupidkfnCBI** an interface to the function `stupidkfn` for random farthest neighbour clustering. See the `stupidkfn` help page. This assumes a distance matrix as input.
- stupidkavenCBI** an interface to the function `stupidkaven` for random average dissimilarity clustering. See the `stupidkaven` help page. This assumes a distance matrix as input.

## Value

All interface functions return a list with the following components (there may be some more, see `summary.out` and `points.out` above):

<code>result</code>	clustering result, usually a list with the full output of the clustering method (the precise format doesn't matter); whatever you want to use later.
<code>nc</code>	number of clusters. If some points don't belong to any cluster, these are declared "noise". <code>nc</code> includes the "noise cluster", and there should be another component <code>nccl</code> , being the number of clusters not including the noise cluster.
<code>clusterlist</code>	this is a list consisting of a logical vectors of length of the number of data points ( <code>n</code> ) for each cluster, indicating whether a point is a member of this cluster (TRUE) or not. If a noise cluster is included, it should always be the last vector in this list.
<code>partition</code>	an integer vector of length <code>n</code> , partitioning the data. If the method produces a partition, it should be the clustering. This component is only used for plots, so you could do something like <code>rep(1, n)</code> for non-partitioning methods. If a noise cluster is included, <code>nc=nccl+1</code> and the noise cluster is cluster <code>no. nc</code> .
<code>clustermethod</code>	a string indicating the clustering method.

The output of some of the functions has further components:

<code>nccl</code>	see <code>nc</code> above.
<code>nnk</code>	by <code>noisemclustCBI</code> and <code>distnoisemclustCBI</code> , see above.

`initnoise` logical vector, indicating initially estimated noise by `NNclean`, called by `noisemclustCBI` and `distnoisemclustCBI`.

`noise` logical. TRUE if points were classified as noise/outliers by `disthclustCBI`.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### See Also

[clusterboot](#), [dist](#), [kmeans](#), [kmeansruns](#), [hclust](#), [mclustBIC](#), [pam](#), [pamk](#), [clara](#), [dbscan](#), [fixmahal](#), [tclust](#), [pdfCluster](#)

### Examples

```
options(digits=3)
set.seed(20000)
face <- rFace(50, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
dbs <- dbscanCBI(face, eps=1.5, MinPts=4)
dhc <- disthclustCBI(dist(face), method="average", k=1.5, noise=2)
table(dbs$partition, dhc$partition)
dm <- mergenormCBI(face, G=10, modelNames="EEE", nnk=2)
dtc <- tclustCBI(face, 6, trim=0.1, restr.fact=500)
table(dm$partition, dtc$partition)
```

---

kmeansruns

*k-means with estimating k and initialisations*

---

### Description

This calls the function `kmeans` to perform a k-means clustering, but initializes the k-means algorithm several times with random points from the data set as means. Furthermore, it is more robust against the occurrence of empty clusters in the algorithm and it estimates the number of clusters by either the Calinski Harabasz index ([calinchara](#)) or average silhouette width (see [pam.object](#)). The Duda-Hart test ([dudahart2](#)) is applied to decide whether there should be more than one cluster (unless 1 is excluded as number of clusters).

### Usage

```
kmeansruns(data, krange=2:10, criterion="ch",
            iter.max=100, runs=100,
            scaledata=FALSE, alpha=0.001,
            critout=FALSE, plot=FALSE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

data	A numeric matrix of data, or an object that can be coerced to such a matrix (such as a numeric vector or a data frame with all numeric columns).
krange	integer vector. Numbers of clusters which are to be compared by the average silhouette width criterion. Note: average silhouette width and Calinski-Harabasz can't estimate number of clusters $nc=1$ . If 1 is included, a Duda-Hart test is applied and 1 is estimated if this is not significant.
criterion	one of "asw" or "ch". Determines whether average silhouette width or Calinski-Harabasz is applied.
iter.max	integer. The maximum number of iterations allowed.
runs	integer. Number of starts of the k-means algorithm.
scaledata	logical. If TRUE, the variables are centered and scaled to unit variance before execution.
alpha	numeric between 0 and 1, tuning constant for <code>dudahart2</code> (only used for 1-cluster test).
critout	logical. If TRUE, the criterion value is printed out for every number of clusters.
plot	logical. If TRUE, every clustering resulting from a run of the algorithm is plotted.
...	further arguments to be passed on to <code>kmeans</code> .

**Value**

The output of the optimal run of the `kmeans`-function with added components `bestk` and `crit`. A list with components

cluster	A vector of integers indicating the cluster to which each point is allocated.
centers	A matrix of cluster centers.
withinss	The within-cluster sum of squares for each cluster.
size	The number of points in each cluster.
bestk	The optimal number of clusters.
crit	Vector with values of the criterion for all used numbers of clusters (0 if number not tried).

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

- Calinski, T., and Harabasz, J. (1974) A Dendrite Method for Cluster Analysis, *Communications in Statistics*, 3, 1-27.
- Duda, R. O. and Hart, P. E. (1973) *Pattern Classification and Scene Analysis*. Wiley, New York.
- Hartigan, J. A. and Wong, M. A. (1979). A K-means clustering algorithm. *Applied Statistics*, 28, 100-108.
- Kaufman, L. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1990). "Finding Groups in Data: An Introduction to Cluster Analysis". Wiley, New York.

**See Also**

[kmeans](#), [pamk](#), [calinhara](#), [dudahart2](#))

**Examples**

```
options(digits=3)
set.seed(20000)
face <- rFace(50, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
pka <- kmeansruns(face, krange=1:5, critout=TRUE, runs=2, criterion="asw")
pkc <- kmeansruns(face, krange=1:5, critout=TRUE, runs=2, criterion="ch")
```

---

lcmixed

*flexmix method for mixed Gaussian/multinomial mixtures*


---

**Description**

lcmixed is a method for the [flexmix](#)-function in package flexmix. It provides the necessary information to run an EM-algorithm for maximum likelihood estimation for a latent class mixture (clustering) model where some variables are continuous and modelled within the mixture components by Gaussian distributions and some variables are categorical and modelled within components by independent multinomial distributions. lcmixed can be called within flexmix. The function [flexmixedruns](#) is a wrapper function that can be run to apply lcmixed.

Note that at least one categorical variable is needed, but it is possible to use data without continuous variable.

There are further format restrictions to the data (see below in the documentation of continuous and discrete), which can be ignored when running lcmixed through [flexmixedruns](#).

**Usage**

```
lcmixed( formula = .~. , continuous, discrete, ppdim,
         diagonal = TRUE, pred.ordinal=FALSE, printlik=FALSE )
```

**Arguments**

formula	a formula to specify response and explanatory variables. For lcmixed this always has the form $x \sim 1$ , where $x$ is a matrix or data frame of all variables to be involved, because regression and explanatory variables are not implemented.
continuous	number of continuous variables. Note that the continuous variables always need to be the first variables in the matrix or data frame.
discrete	number of categorical variables. Always the last variables in the matrix or data frame. Note that categorical variables always must be coded as integers 1,2,3, etc. without interruption.
ppdim	vector of integers specifying the number of (in the data) existing categories for each categorical variable.

diagonal	logical. If TRUE, Gaussian models are fitted restricted to diagonal covariance matrices. Otherwise, covariance matrices are unrestricted. TRUE is consistent with the "within class independence" assumption for the multinomial variables.
pred.ordinal	logical. If FALSE, the within-component predicted value for categorical variables is the probability mode, otherwise it is the mean of the standard (1,2,3,...) scores, which may be better for ordinal variables.
printlik	logical. If TRUE, the loglikelihood is printed out whenever computed.

### Details

The data need to be organised case-wise, i.e., if there are categorical variables only, and 15 cases with values c(1,1,2) on the 3 variables, the data matrix needs 15 rows with values 1 1 2.

General documentation on flexmix methods can be found in Chapter 4 of Friedrich Leisch's "FlexMix: A General Framework for Finite Mixture Models and Latent Class Regression in R", <https://CRAN.R-project.org/package=flexmix>

### Value

An object of class FLXMC (not documented; only used internally by flexmix).

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en>

### References

Hennig, C. and Liao, T. (2013) How to find an appropriate clustering for mixed-type variables with application to socio-economic stratification, *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series C Applied Statistics*, 62, 309-369.

### See Also

[flexmixedruns](#), [flexmix](#), [flexmix-class](#), [discrete.recode](#), which recodes a dataset into the format required by lcmixed

### Examples

```
set.seed(112233)
options(digits=3)
require(MASS)
require(flexmix)
data(Cars93)
Cars934 <- Cars93[,c(3,5,8,10)]
cc <-
discrete.recode(Cars934,xvarsorted=FALSE,continuous=c(2,3),discrete=c(1,4))
fcc <- flexmix(cc$data~1,k=2,
model=lcmixed(continuous=2,discrete=2,ppdim=c(6,3),diagonal=TRUE))
summary(fcc)
```

---

localshape	<i>Local shape matrix</i>
------------	---------------------------

---

**Description**

This computes a matrix formalising 'local shape', i.e., aggregated standardised variance/covariance in a Mahalanobis neighbourhood of the data points. This can be used for finding clusters when used as one of the covariance matrices in Invariant Coordinate Selection (function `ics` in package `ICS`), see Hennig's discussion and rejoinder of Tyler et al. (2009).

**Usage**

```
localshape(xdata,proportion=0.1,mscatter="mcd",mcdalpha=0.8,
          covstandard="det")
```

**Arguments**

xdata	objects times variables data matrix.
proportion	proportion of points to be considered as neighbourhood.
mscatter	"mcd" or "cov"; specified minimum covariance determinant or classical covariance matrix to be used for Mahalanobis distance computation.
mcdalpha	if mscatter="mcd", this is the alpha parameter to be used by the MCD covariance matrix, i.e. one minus the asymptotic breakdown point, see <a href="#">covMcd</a> .
covstandard	one of "trace", "det" or "none", determining by what constant the pointwise neighbourhood covariance matrices are standardised. "det" makes the affine equivariant, as noted in the discussion rejoinder of Tyler et al. (2009).

**Value**

The local shape matrix.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en>

**References**

Tyler, D. E., Critchley, F., Duembgen, L., Oja, H. (2009) Invariant coordinate selection (with discussion). *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series B*, 549-592.

**Examples**

```
options(digits=3)
data(iris)
localshape(iris[,-5],mscatter="cov")
```



---

`mahalanodisc`*Mahalanobis for AWC*

---

**Description**

Vector of Mahalanobis distances or their root. For use in `awcoord` only.

**Usage**

```
mahalanodisc(x2, mg, covg, modus="square")
```

**Arguments**

<code>x2</code>	numerical data matrix.
<code>mg</code>	mean vector.
<code>covg</code>	covariance matrix.
<code>modus</code>	"md" (roots of Mahalanobis distances) or "square" (original squared form of Mahalanobis distances).

**Details**

The covariance matrix is inverted by use of `solvecov`, which can be expected to give reasonable results for singular within-class covariance matrices.

**Value**

vector of (rooted) Mahalanobis distances.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**See Also**

[awcoord](#), [solvecov](#)

**Examples**

```
options(digits=3)
x <- cbind(rnorm(50), rnorm(50))
mahalanodisc(x, c(0, 0), cov(x))
mahalanodisc(x, c(0, 0), matrix(0, ncol=2, nrow=2))
```

mahalanofix

*Mahalanobis distances from center of indexed points***Description**

Computes the vector of (classical or robust) Mahalanobis distances of all points of `x` to the center of the points indexed (or weighted) by `gv`. The latter also determine the covariance matrix.

Thought for use within `fixmahal`.

**Usage**

```
mahalanofix(x, n = nrow(as.matrix(x)), p = ncol(as.matrix(x)), gv =
rep(1, times = n), cmax = 1e+10, method = "ml")
```

```
mahalanofuz(x, n = nrow(as.matrix(x)), p = ncol(as.matrix(x)),
gv = rep(1, times=n), cmax = 1e+10)
```

**Arguments**

<code>x</code>	a numerical data matrix, rows are points, columns are variables.
<code>n</code>	positive integer. Number of points.
<code>p</code>	positive integer. Number of variables.
<code>gv</code>	for <code>mahalanofix</code> a logical or 0-1 vector of length <code>n</code> . For <code>mahalanofuz</code> a numerical vector with values between 0 and 1.
<code>cmax</code>	positive number. used in <code>solvecov</code> if covariance matrix is singular.
<code>method</code>	"ml", "classical", "mcd" or "mve". Method to compute the covariance matrix estimator. See <code>cov.rob</code> , <code>fixmahal</code> .

**Details**

`solvecov` is used to invert the covariance matrix. The methods "mcd" and "mve" in `mahalanofix` do not work properly with point constellations with singular covariance matrices!

**Value**

A list of the following components:

<code>md</code>	vector of Mahalanobis distances.
<code>mg</code>	mean of the points indexed by <code>gv</code> , weighted mean in <code>mahalanofuz</code> .
<code>covg</code>	covariance matrix of the points indexed by <code>gv</code> , weighted covariance matrix in <code>mahalanofuz</code> .
<code>covinv</code>	<code>covg</code> inverted by <code>solvecov</code> .
<code>coll</code>	logical. If TRUE, <code>covg</code> has been (numerically) singular.

**Note**

Methods "mcd" and "mve" require library lqs.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**See Also**

[fixmahal](#), [solvecov](#), [cov.rob](#)

**Examples**

```
x <- c(1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10)
y <- c(1,2,3,8,7,6,5,8,9,10)
mahalanofix(cbind(x,y),gv=c(0,0,0,1,1,1,1,1,0,0))
mahalanofix(cbind(x,y),gv=c(0,0,0,1,1,1,1,0,0,0))
mahalanofix(cbind(x,y),gv=c(0,0,0,1,1,1,1,1,0,0),method="mcd")
mahalanofuz(cbind(x,y),gv=c(0,0,0.5,0.5,1,1,1,0.5,0.5,0))
```

---

mahalconf

*Mahalanobis fixed point clusters initial configuration*

---

**Description**

Generates an initial configuration of `startn` points from dataset `x` for the [fixmahal](#) fixed point iteration.

Thought only for use within [fixmahal](#).

**Usage**

```
mahalconf(x, no, startn, covall, plot)
```

**Arguments**

<code>x</code>	numerical matrix. Rows are points, columns are variables.
<code>no</code>	integer between 1 and <code>nrow(x)</code> . Number of the first point of the configuration.
<code>startn</code>	integer between 1 and <code>nrow(x)</code> .
<code>covall</code>	covariance matrix for the computation of the first Mahalanobis distances.
<code>plot</code>	a string. If equal to "start" or "both", the first two variables and the first <code>ncol(x)+1</code> points are plotted.

**Details**

mahalconf first chooses the  $p$  (number of variables) nearest points to point no. no in terms of the Mahalanobis distance w.r.t. covall, so that there are  $p + 1$  points. In every further step, the covariance matrix of the current configuration is computed and the nearest point in terms of the new Mahalanobis distance is added. `solvecov` is used to invert singular covariance matrices.

**Value**

A logical vector of length `nrow(x)`.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**See Also**

`fixmahal`, `solvecov`

**Examples**

```
set.seed(4634)
face <- rFace(600, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
mahalconf(face, no=200, startn=20, covall=cov(face), plot="start")
```

---

mergenormals

*Clustering by merging Gaussian mixture components*

---

**Description**

Clustering by merging Gaussian mixture components; computes all methods introduced in Hennig (2010) from an initial mclust clustering. See details section for details.

**Usage**

```
mergenormals(xdata, mclustsummary=NULL,
             clustering, probs, muarray, Sigmaarray, z,
             method=NULL, cutoff=NULL, by=0.005,
             numberstop=NULL, renumber=TRUE, M=50, ...)

## S3 method for class 'mergenorm'
summary(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'summary.mergenorm'
print(x, ...)
```

**Arguments**

<code>xdata</code>	data (something that can be coerced into a matrix).
<code>mclustsummary</code>	output object from <code>summary.mclustBIC</code> for <code>xdata</code> . Either <code>mclustsummary</code> or all of <code>clustering</code> , <code>probs</code> , <code>muarray</code> , <code>Sigmaarray</code> and <code>z</code> need to be specified (the latter are obtained from <code>mclustsummary</code> if they are not provided). I am not aware of restrictions of the usage of <code>mclustBIC</code> to produce an initial clustering; covariance matrix models can be restricted and a noise component can be included if desired, although I have probably not tested all possibilities.
<code>clustering</code>	vector of integers. Initial assignment of data to mixture components.
<code>probs</code>	vector of component proportions (for all components; should sum up to one).
<code>muarray</code>	matrix of component means (rows).
<code>Sigmaarray</code>	array of component covariance matrices (third dimension refers to component number).
<code>z</code>	matrix of observation- (row-)wise posterior probabilities of belonging to the components (columns).
<code>method</code>	one of "bhat", "ridge.uni", "ridge.ratio", "demp", "dipuni", "diptantrum", "predictive". See details.
<code>cutoff</code>	numeric between 0 and 1. Tuning constant, see details and Hennig (2010). If not specified, the default values given in (9) in Hennig (2010) are used.
<code>by</code>	real between 0 and 1. Interval width for density computation along the ridgeline, used for methods "ridge.uni" and "ridge.ratio". Methods "dipuni" and "diptantrum" require ridgeline computations and use it as well.
<code>numberstop</code>	integer. If specified, <code>cutoff</code> is ignored and components are merged until the number of clusters specified here is reached.
<code>renumber</code>	logical. If TRUE merged clusters are renumbered from 1 to their number. If not, numbers of the original clustering are used (numbers of components that were merged into others then will not appear).
<code>M</code>	integer. Number of times the dataset is divided into two halves. Used if <code>method="predictive"</code> .
<code>...</code>	additional optional parameters to pass on to <code>ridgeline.diagnosis</code> or <code>mixpredictive</code> (in <code>mergenormals</code> ).
<code>object</code>	object of class <code>mergenorm</code> , output of <code>mergenormals</code> .
<code>x</code>	object of class <code>summary.mergenorm</code> , output of <code>summary.mergenorm</code> .

**Details**

Mixture components are merged in a hierarchical fashion. The merging criterion is computed for all pairs of current clusters and the two clusters with the highest criterion value (lowest, respectively, for `method="predictive"`) are merged. Then criterion values are recomputed for the merged cluster. Merging is continued until the criterion value to merge is below (or above, for `method="predictive"`) the `cutoff` value. Details are given in Hennig (2010). The following criteria are offered, specified by the `method`-argument.

**"ridge.uni"** components are only merged if their mixture is unimodal according to Ray and Lindsay's (2005) ridgeline theory, see `ridgeline.diagnosis`. This ignores argument `cutoff`.

- "ridge.ratio"** ratio between density minimum between components and minimum of density maxima according to Ray and Lindsay's (2005) ridgeline theory, see [ridgeline.diagnosis](#).
- "bhat"** Bhattacharyya upper bound on misclassification probability between two components, see [bhattacharyya.matrix](#).
- "demp"** direct estimation of misclassification probability between components, see Hennig (2010).
- "dipuni"** this uses `method="ridge.ratio"` to decide which clusters to merge but stops merging according to the p-value of the dip test computed as in Hartigan and Hartigan (1985), see [dip.test](#).
- "diptantrum"** as "dipuni", but p-value of dip test computed as in Tantrum, Murua and Stuetzle (2003), see [dipp.tantrum](#).
- "predictive"** this uses `method="demp"` to decide which clusters to merge but stops merging according to the value of prediction strength (Tibshirani and Walther, 2005) as computed in [mixpredictive](#).

## Value

`mergenormals` gives out an object of class `mergenorm`, which is a List with components

- `clustering` integer vector. Final clustering.
- `clusternumbers` vector of numbers of remaining clusters. These are given in terms of the original clusters even of `renumber=TRUE`, in which case they may be needed to understand the numbering of some further components, see below.
- `defunct.components` vector of numbers of components that were "merged away".
- `valuemerged` vector of values of the merging criterion (see details) at which components were merged.
- `mergedtonumbers` vector of numbers of clusters to which the original components were merged.
- `parameters` a list, if `mclustsummary` was provided. Entry no. `i` refers to number `i` in `clusternumbers`. The list entry `i` contains the parameters of the original mixture components that make up cluster `i`, as extracted by [extract.mixturepars](#).
- `predvalues` vector of prediction strength values for `clusternumbers` from 1 to the number of components in the original mixture, if `method=="predictive"`. See [mixpredictive](#).
- `orig.decisionmatrix` square matrix with entries giving the original values of the merging criterion (see details) for every pair of original mixture components.
- `new.decisionmatrix` square matrix as `orig.decisionmatrix`, but with final entries; numbering of rows and columns corresponds to `clusternumbers`; all entries corresponding to other rows and columns can be ignored.
- `probs` final cluster values of `probs` (see arguments) for merged components, generated by (potentially repeated) execution of [mergeparameters](#) out of the original ones. Numbered according to `clusternumbers`.
- `muarray` final cluster means, analogous to `probs`.
- `Sigmaarray` final cluster covariance matrices, analogous to `probs`.

z	final matrix of posterior probabilities of observations belonging to the clusters, analogous to probs.
noise	logical. If TRUE, there was a noise component fitted in the initial mclust clustering (see help for initialization in <code>mclustBIC</code> ). In this case, a cluster number 0 indicates noise. noise is ignored by the merging methods and kept as it was originally.
method	as above.
cutoff	as above.

`summary.mergenorm` gives out a list with components `clustering`, `clusternumbers`, `defunct.components`, `valuemerged`, `mergedtonumbers`, `predvalues`, `probs`, `muarray`, `Sigmaarray`, `z`, `noise`, `method`, `cutoff` as above, plus `onc` (original number of components) and `mnc` (number of clusters after merging).

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### References

- J. A. Hartigan and P. M. Hartigan (1985) The Dip Test of Unimodality, *Annals of Statistics*, 13, 70-84.
- Hennig, C. (2010) Methods for merging Gaussian mixture components, *Advances in Data Analysis and Classification*, 4, 3-34.
- Ray, S. and Lindsay, B. G. (2005) The Topography of Multivariate Normal Mixtures, *Annals of Statistics*, 33, 2042-2065.
- Tantrum, J., Murua, A. and Stuetzle, W. (2003) Assessment and Pruning of Hierarchical Model Based Clustering, *Proceedings of the ninth ACM SIGKDD international conference on Knowledge discovery and data mining*, Washington, D.C., 197-205.
- Tibshirani, R. and Walther, G. (2005) Cluster Validation by Prediction Strength, *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, 14, 511-528.

### Examples

```
require(mclust)
require(MASS)
options(digits=3)
data(crabs)
dc <- crabs[,4:8]
cm <- mclustBIC(crabs[,4:8],G=9,modelNames="EEE")
scm <- summary(cm,crabs[,4:8])
cmnbhat <- mergenormals(crabs[,4:8],scm,method="bhat")
summary(cmnbhat)
cmdemp <- mergenormals(crabs[,4:8],scm,method="demp")
summary(cmdemp)
# Other methods take a bit longer, but try them!
# The values of by and M below are still chosen for reasonably fast execution.
```

```
# cmnrr <- mergenormals(crabs[,4:8],scm,method="ridge.ratio",by=0.05)
# cmd <- mergenormals(crabs[,4:8],scm,method="dip.tantrum",by=0.05)
# cmp <- mergenormals(crabs[,4:8],scm,method="predictive",M=3)
```

---

mergeparameters      *New parameters from merging two Gaussian mixture components*

---

### Description

Re-computes pointwise posterior probabilities, mean and covariance matrix for a mixture component obtained by merging two mixture components in a Gaussian mixture.

### Usage

```
mergeparameters(xdata, j1, j2, probs, muarray, Sigmaarray, z)
```

### Arguments

xdata	data (something that can be coerced into a matrix).
j1	integer. Number of first mixture component to be merged.
j2	integer. Number of second mixture component to be merged.
probs	vector of component proportions (for all components; should sum up to one).
muarray	matrix of component means (rows).
Sigmaarray	array of component covariance matrices (third dimension refers to component number).
z	matrix of observation- (row-)wise posterior probabilities of belonging to the components (columns).

### Value

List with components

probs	see above; sum of probabilities for original components j1 and j2 is now probs[j1]. Note that generally, also for the further components, values for the merged component are in place j1 and values in place j2 are not changed. This means that in order to have only the information for the new mixture after merging, the entries in places j2 need to be suppressed.
muarray	see above; weighted mean of means of component j1 and j2 is now in place j1.
Sigmaarray	see above; weighted covariance matrix handled as above.
z	see above; original entries for columns j1 and j2 are summed up and now in column j1.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>



## References

Hennig, C. (2010) Methods for merging Gaussian mixture components, *Advances in Data Analysis and Classification*, 4, 3-34.

## Examples

```
options(digits=3)
set.seed(98765)
require(mclust)
iriss <- iris[sample(150,20),-5]
irisBIC <- mclustBIC(iriss)
siriss <- summary(irisBIC,iriss)
probs <- siriss$parameters$pro
muarray <- siriss$parameters$mean
Sigmaarray <- siriss$parameters$variance$sigma
z <- siriss$z
mpi <- mergeparameters(iriss,1,2,probs,muarray,Sigmaarray,z)
mpi$probs
mpi$muarray
```

---

minsize

*Minimum size of regression fixed point cluster*

---

## Description

Computes the minimum size of a fixed point cluster (FPC) which is found at least `mtf` times with approximated probability `prob` by `ir` fixed point iterations of `fixreg`.

Thought for use within `fixreg`.

## Usage

```
minsize(n, p, ir, mtf, prob = 0.5)
```

## Arguments

<code>n</code>	positive integer. Total number of points.
<code>p</code>	positive integer. Number of independent variables.
<code>ir</code>	positive integer. Number of fixed point iterations.
<code>mtf</code>	positive integer.
<code>prob</code>	numerical between 0 and 1.

## Details

The computation is based on the binomial distribution with probability given by `clusexpect` with `ir=1`.

**Value**

An integer.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Hennig, C. (2002) Fixed point clusters for linear regression: computation and comparison, *Journal of Classification* 19, 249-276.

**See Also**

[fixreg](#), [clusexpect](#), [itnumber](#)

**Examples**

```
minsize(500,4,7000,2)
```

---

mixdens

*Density of multivariate Gaussian mixture, mclust parameterisation*

---

**Description**

Computes density values for data from a mixture of multivariate Gaussian distributions with parameters based on the way models are specified and parameters are stored in package mclust.

**Usage**

```
mixdens(modelName, data, parameters)
```

**Arguments**

modelName      an mclust model name. See [mclustModelNames](#).  
data            data matrix; density values are computed for every observation (row).  
parameters     parameters of Gaussian mixture in the format used in the output of [summary.mclustBIC](#).

**Value**

Vector of density values for the observations.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**Examples**

```

set.seed(98765)
require(mclust)
iriss <- iris[sample(150,20),-5]
irisBIC <- mclustBIC(iriss)
siriss <- summary(irisBIC,iriss)
round(mixdens(siriss$modelName,iriss,siriss$parameters),digits=2)

```

---

mixpredictive

*Prediction strength of merged Gaussian mixture*


---

**Description**

Computes the prediction strength of clustering by merging Gaussian mixture components, see [mergenormals](#). The predictive strength is defined according to Tibshirani and Walther (2005), carried out as described in Hennig (2010), see details.

**Usage**

```
mixpredictive(xdata, Gcomp, Gmix, M=50, ...)
```

**Arguments**

xdata	data (something that can be coerced into a matrix).
Gcomp	integer. Number of components of the underlying Gaussian mixture.
Gmix	integer. Number of clusters after merging Gaussian components.
M	integer. Number of times the dataset is divided into two halves.
...	further arguments that can potentially arrive in calls but are currently not used.

**Details**

The prediction strength for a certain number of clusters  $G_{mix}$  under a random partition of the dataset in halves  $A$  and  $B$  is defined as follows. Both halves are clustered with  $G_{mix}$  clusters. Then the points of  $A$  are classified to the clusters of  $B$ . This is done by use of the maximum a posteriori rule for mixtures as in Hennig (2010), differently from Tibshirani and Walther (2005). A pair of points  $A$  in the same  $A$ -cluster is defined to be correctly predicted if both points are classified into the same cluster on  $B$ . The same is done with the points of  $B$  relative to the clustering on  $A$ . The prediction strength for each of the clusterings is the minimum (taken over all clusters) relative frequency of correctly predicted pairs of points of that cluster. The final mean prediction strength statistic is the mean over all  $2M$  clusterings.

**Value**

List with components

predcorr	vector of length $M$ with relative frequencies of correct predictions (clusterwise minimum).
mean.pred	mean of predcorr.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

- Hennig, C. (2010) Methods for merging Gaussian mixture components, *Advances in Data Analysis and Classification*, 4, 3-34.
- Tibshirani, R. and Walther, G. (2005) Cluster Validation by Prediction Strength, *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, 14, 511-528.

**See Also**

[prediction.strength](#) for Tibshirani and Walther's original method. [mergenormals](#) for the clustering method applied here.

**Examples**

```
set.seed(98765)
iriss <- iris[sample(150,20),-5]
mp <- mixpredictive(iriss,2,2,M=2)
```

---

mvdcoord

*Mean/variance differences discriminant coordinates*


---

**Description**

Discriminant projections as defined in Young, Marco and Odell (1987). The principle is to maximize the projection of a matrix consisting of the differences between the means of all classes and the first mean and the differences between the covariance matrices of all classes and the first covariance matrix.

**Usage**

```
mvdcoord(xd, clvecd, clnum=1, sphere="mcd", ...)
```

**Arguments**

xd	the data matrix; a numerical object which can be coerced to a matrix.
clvecd	integer vector of class numbers; length must equal nrow(xd).
clnum	integer. Number of the class to which all differences are computed.
sphere	a covariance matrix or one of "mve", "mcd", "classical", "none". The matrix used for sphering the data. "mcd" and "mve" are robust covariance matrices as implemented in <a href="#">cov.rob</a> . "classical" refers to the classical covariance matrix. "none" means no sphering and use of the raw data.
...	no effect

**Value**

List with the following components

ev	eigenvalues in descending order.
units	columns are coordinates of projection basis vectors. New points x can be projected onto the projection basis vectors by $x \%*\% \text{units}$
proj	projections of xd onto units.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Young, D. M., Marco, V. R. and Odell, P. L. (1987). Quadratic discrimination: some results on optimal low-dimensional representation, *Journal of Statistical Planning and Inference*, 17, 307-319.

**See Also**

[plotcluster](#) for straight forward discriminant plots. [discrproj](#) for alternatives. [rFace](#) for generation of the example data used below.

**Examples**

```
set.seed(4634)
face <- rFace(300, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=3)
grface <- as.integer(attr(face, "grouping"))
mcf <- mvdcoord(face, grface)
plot(mcf$proj, col=grface)
# ...done in one step by function plotcluster.
```

---

ncoord

*Neighborhood based discriminant coordinates*


---

**Description**

Neighborhood based discriminant coordinates as defined in Hastie and Tibshirani (1996) and a robustified version as defined in Hennig (2003). The principle is to maximize the projection of a between classes covariance matrix, which is defined by averaging the between classes covariance matrices in the neighborhoods of all points.

**Usage**

```
ncoord(xd, clvecd, nn=50, weighted=FALSE,
        sphere="mcd", orderall=TRUE, countmode=1000, ...)
```

**Arguments**

xd	the data matrix; a numerical object which can be coerced to a matrix.
clvecd	integer vector of class numbers; length must equal nrow(xd).
nn	integer. Number of points which belong to the neighborhood of each point (including the point itself).
weighted	logical. FALSE corresponds to the original method of Hastie and Tibshirani (1996). If TRUE, the between classes covariance matrices B are weighted by w/trace B, where w is some weight depending on the sizes of the classes in the neighborhood. Division by trace B reduces the effect of outliers. TRUE corresponds to WNC as defined in Hennig (2003).
sphere	a covariance matrix or one of "mve", "mcd", "classical", "none". The matrix used for sphering the data. "mcd" and "mve" are robust covariance matrices as implemented in <code>cov.rob</code> . "classical" refers to the classical covariance matrix. "none" means no sphering and use of the raw data.
orderall	logical. By default, the neighborhoods are computed by ordering all points each time. If FALSE, the neighborhoods are computed by selecting nn times the nearest point from the remaining points, which may be faster sometimes.
countmode	optional positive integer. Every countmode algorithm runs ncoord shows a message.
...	no effect

**Value**

List with the following components

ev	eigenvalues in descending order.
units	columns are coordinates of projection basis vectors. New points x can be projected onto the projection basis vectors by <code>x %*% units</code>
proj	projections of xd onto units.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

- Hastie, T. and Tibshirani, R. (1996). Discriminant adaptive nearest neighbor classification. *IEEE Transactions on Pattern Analysis and Machine Intelligence* 18, 607-616.
- Hennig, C. (2004) Asymmetric linear dimension reduction for classification. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics* 13, 930-945 .
- Hennig, C. (2005) A method for visual cluster validation. In: Weihs, C. and Gaul, W. (eds.): *Classification - The Ubiquitous Challenge*. Springer, Heidelberg 2005, 153-160.

**See Also**

[plotcluster](#) for straight forward discriminant plots. [discrproj](#) for alternatives. [rFace](#) for generation of the example data used below.

**Examples**

```
set.seed(4634)
face <- rFace(600,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0)
grface <- as.integer(attr(face,"grouping"))
ncf <- ncoord(face,grface)
plot(ncf$proj,col=grface)
ncf2 <- ncoord(face,grface,weighted=TRUE)
plot(ncf2$proj,col=grface)
# ...done in one step by function plotcluster.
```

---

neginc

*Neg-entropy normality index for cluster validation*

---

**Description**

Cluster validity index based on the neg-entropy distances of within-cluster distributions to normal distribution, see Lago-Fernandez and Corbacho (2010).

**Usage**

```
neginc(x,clustering)
```

**Arguments**

x	something that can be coerced into a numerical matrix. Euclidean dataset.
clustering	vector of integers with length =nrow(x); indicating the cluster for each observation.

**Value**

Index value, see Lago-Fernandez and Corbacho (2010). The lower (i.e., the more negative) the better.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Lago-Fernandez, L. F. and Corbacho, F. (2010) Normality-based validation for crisp clustering. *Pattern Recognition* 43, 782-795.

## Examples

```
options(digits=3)
iriss <- as.matrix(iris[c(1:10,51:55,101:105),-5])
irisc <- as.numeric(iris[c(1:10,51:55,101:105),5])
neginc(iriss,irisc)
```

---

nselectboot

*Selection of the number of clusters via bootstrap*


---

## Description

Selection of the number of clusters via bootstrap as explained in Fang and Wang (2012). Several times 2 bootstrap samples are drawn from the data and the number of clusters is chosen by optimising an instability estimation from these pairs.

In principle all clustering methods can be used that have a CBI-wrapper, see [clusterboot](#), [kmeansCBI](#). However, the currently implemented classification methods are not necessarily suitable for all of them, see argument `classification`.

## Usage

```
nselectboot(data,B=50,distances=inherits(data,"dist"),
            clustermethod=NULL,
            classification="averagedist",centroidname = NULL,
            krange=2:10, count=FALSE,nnk=1,
            largeisgood=FALSE,...)
```

## Arguments

<code>data</code>	something that can be coerced into a matrix. The data matrix - either an $n \times p$ -data matrix (or data frame) or an $n \times n$ -dissimilarity matrix (or <code>dist</code> -object).
<code>B</code>	integer. Number of resampling runs.
<code>distances</code>	logical. If <code>TRUE</code> , the data is interpreted as dissimilarity matrix. If data is a <code>dist</code> -object, <code>distances=TRUE</code> automatically, otherwise <code>distances=FALSE</code> by default. This means that you have to set it to <code>TRUE</code> manually if data is a dissimilarity matrix.
<code>clustermethod</code>	an interface function (the function name, not a string containing the name, has to be provided!). This defines the clustering method. See the "Details"-section of <a href="#">clusterboot</a> and <a href="#">kmeansCBI</a> for the format. Clustering methods for <code>nselectboot</code> must have a <code>k</code> -argument for the number of clusters and must otherwise follow the specifications in <a href="#">clusterboot</a> . Note that <code>nselectboot</code> won't work with CBI-functions that implicitly already estimate the number of clusters such as <a href="#">pamkCBI</a> ; use <a href="#">claraCBI</a> if you want to run it for <code>pam/clara</code> clustering.
<code>classification</code>	string. This determines how non-clustered points are classified to given clusters. Options are explained in <a href="#">classifdist</a> (if <code>distances=TRUE</code> ) and <a href="#">classifnp</a> (otherwise). Certain classification methods are connected to certain clustering methods. <code>classification="averagedist"</code> is recommended for average



	linkage, classification="centroid" is recommended for k-means, clara and pam (with distances it will work with <a href="#">claraCBI</a> only), classification="knn" with nnk=1 is recommended for single linkage and classification="qda" is recommended for Gaussian mixtures with flexible covariance matrices.
centroidname	string. Indicates the name of the component of CBIoutput\$result that contains the cluster centroids in case of classification="centroid", where CBIoutput is the output object of clustermethod. If clustermethod is kmeansCBI or claraCBI, centroids are recognised automatically if centroidname=NULL. If centroidname=NULL and distances=FALSE, cluster means are computed as the cluster centroids.
krange	integer vector; numbers of clusters to be tried.
count	logical. If TRUE, numbers of clusters and bootstrap runs are printed.
nnk	number of nearest neighbours if classification="knn", see <a href="#">classifdist</a> (if distances=TRUE) and <a href="#">classifnp</a> (otherwise).
largeisgood	logical. If TRUE, output component stabk is taken as one minus the original instability value so that larger values of stabk are better.
...	arguments to be passed on to the clustering method.

**Value**

nselectboot returns a list with components kopt, stabk, stab.

kopt	optimal number of clusters.
stabk	mean instability values for numbers of clusters (or one minus this if largeisgood=TRUE).
stab	matrix of instability values for all bootstrap runs and numbers of clusters.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Fang, Y. and Wang, J. (2012) Selection of the number of clusters via the bootstrap method. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 56, 468-477.

**See Also**

[classifdist](#), [classifnp](#), [clusterboot](#), [kmeansCBI](#)

**Examples**

```
set.seed(20000)
face <- rFace(50, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
nselectboot(dist(face), B=2, clustermethod=disthclustCBI,
  method="average", krange=5:7)
nselectboot(dist(face), B=2, clustermethod=claraCBI,
  classification="centroid", krange=5:7)
```

```
nselectboot(face,B=2,clustermethod=kmeansCBI,
  classification="centroid",krange=5:7)
# Of course use larger B in a real application.
```

---

pamk

*Partitioning around medoids with estimation of number of clusters*

---

## Description

This calls the function `pam` or `clara` to perform a partitioning around medoids clustering with the number of clusters estimated by optimum average silhouette width (see `pam.object`) or Calinski-Harabasz index (`calinhara`). The Duda-Hart test (`dudahart2`) is applied to decide whether there should be more than one cluster (unless 1 is excluded as number of clusters or data are dissimilarities).

## Usage

```
pamk(data,krange=2:10,criterion="asw", usepam=TRUE,
  scaling=FALSE, alpha=0.001, diss=inherits(data, "dist"),
  critout=FALSE, ns=10, seed=NULL, ...)
```

## Arguments

data	a data matrix or data frame or something that can be coerced into a matrix, or dissimilarity matrix or object. See <code>pam</code> for more information.
krange	integer vector. Numbers of clusters which are to be compared by the average silhouette width criterion. Note: average silhouette width and Calinski-Harabasz can't estimate number of clusters $nc=1$ . If 1 is included, a Duda-Hart test is applied and 1 is estimated if this is not significant.
criterion	one of "asw", "multiasw" or "ch". Determines whether average silhouette width (as given out by <code>pam/clara</code> , or as computed by <code>distcritmulti</code> if "multiasw" is specified; recommended for large data sets with <code>usepam=FALSE</code> ) or Calinski-Harabasz is applied. Note that the original Calinski-Harabasz index is not defined for dissimilarities; if dissimilarity data is run with <code>criterion="ch"</code> , the dissimilarity-based generalisation in Hennig and Liao (2013) is used.
usepam	logical. If TRUE, <code>pam</code> is used, otherwise <code>clara</code> (recommended for large datasets with 2,000 or more observations; dissimilarity matrices can not be used with <code>clara</code> ).
scaling	either a logical value or a numeric vector of length equal to the number of variables. If <code>scaling</code> is a numeric vector with length equal to the number of variables, then each variable is divided by the corresponding value from <code>scaling</code> . If <code>scaling</code> is TRUE then <code>scaling</code> is done by dividing the (centered) variables by their root-mean-square, and if <code>scaling</code> is FALSE, no scaling is done.
alpha	numeric between 0 and 1, tuning constant for <code>dudahart2</code> (only used for 1-cluster test).

diss	logical flag: if TRUE (default for dist or dissimilarity-objects), then data will be considered as a dissimilarity matrix (and the potential number of clusters 1 will be ignored). If FALSE, then data will be considered as a matrix of observations by variables.
critout	logical. If TRUE, the criterion value is printed out for every number of clusters.
ns	passed on to <code>distcritmulti</code> if <code>criterion="multiasw"</code> .
seed	passed on to <code>distcritmulti</code> if <code>criterion="multiasw"</code> .
...	further arguments to be transferred to <code>pam</code> or <code>clara</code> .

### Value

A list with components

pamobject	The output of the optimal run of the <code>pam</code> -function.
nc	the optimal number of clusters.
crit	vector of criterion values for numbers of clusters. <code>crit[1]</code> is the p-value of the Duda-Hart test if 1 is in <code>krange</code> and <code>diss=FALSE</code> .

### Note

`clara` and `pam` can handle NA-entries (see their documentation) but `dudahart2` cannot. Therefore NA should not occur if 1 is in `krange`.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### References

- Calinski, R. B., and Harabasz, J. (1974) A Dendrite Method for Cluster Analysis, *Communications in Statistics*, 3, 1-27.
- Duda, R. O. and Hart, P. E. (1973) *Pattern Classification and Scene Analysis*. Wiley, New York.
- Hennig, C. and Liao, T. (2013) How to find an appropriate clustering for mixed-type variables with application to socio-economic stratification, *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series C Applied Statistics*, 62, 309-369.
- Kaufman, L. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1990). "Finding Groups in Data: An Introduction to Cluster Analysis". Wiley, New York.

### See Also

`pam`, `clara` `distcritmulti`

**Examples**

```

options(digits=3)
set.seed(20000)
face <- rFace(50, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
pk1 <- pamk(face, krange=1:5, criterion="asw", critout=TRUE)
pk2 <- pamk(face, krange=1:5, criterion="multiasw", ns=2, critout=TRUE)
# "multiasw" is better for larger data sets, use larger ns then.
pk3 <- pamk(face, krange=1:5, criterion="ch", critout=TRUE)

```

---

piridge

*Ridgeline Pi-function*


---

**Description**

The Pi-function is given in (6) in Ray and Lindsay, 2005. Equating it to the mixture proportion yields locations of two-component Gaussian mixture density extrema.

**Usage**

```
piridge(alpha, mu1, mu2, Sigma1, Sigma2, showplot=FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

alpha	sequence of values between 0 and 1 for which the Pi-function is computed.
mu1	mean vector of component 1.
mu2	mean vector of component 2.
Sigma1	covariance matrix of component 1.
Sigma2	covariance matrix of component 2.
showplot	logical. If TRUE, the Pi-function is plotted against alpha.

**Value**

Vector of values of the Pi-function for values of alpha.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Ray, S. and Lindsay, B. G. (2005) The Topography of Multivariate Normal Mixtures, *Annals of Statistics*, 33, 2042-2065.

**Examples**

```
q <- piridge(seq(0,1,0.1),c(1,1),c(2,5),diag(2),diag(2))
```

---

piridge.zeroes      *Extrema of two-component Gaussian mixture*

---

**Description**

By use of the Pi-function in Ray and Lindsay, 2005, locations of two-component Gaussian mixture density extrema or saddlepoints are computed.

**Usage**

```
piridge.zeroes(prop, mu1, mu2, Sigma1, Sigma2, alphamin=0,
               alphamax=1, by=0.001)
```

**Arguments**

prop	proportion of mixture component 1.
mu1	mean vector of component 1.
mu2	mean vector of component 2.
Sigma1	covariance matrix of component 1.
Sigma2	covariance matrix of component 2.
alphamin	minimum alpha value.
alphamax	maximum alpha value.
by	interval between alpha-values where to look for extrema.

**Value**

list with components

number.zeroes    number of zeroes of Pi-function, i.e., extrema or saddlepoints of density.

estimated.roots    estimated alpha-values at which extrema or saddlepoints occur.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Ray, S. and Lindsay, B. G. (2005) The Topography of Multivariate Normal Mixtures, *Annals of Statistics*, 33, 2042-2065.

**Examples**

```
q <- piridge.zeroes(0.2, c(1,1), c(2,5), diag(2), diag(2), by=0.1)
```

---

plot.valstat

*Simulation-standardised plot and print of cluster validation statistics*


---

### Description

Visualisation and print function for cluster validation output compared to results on simulated random clusterings. The print method can also be used to compute and print an aggregated cluster validation index.

Unlike for many other plot methods, the additional arguments of plot.valstat are essential. print.valstat should make good sense with the defaults, but for computing the aggregate index need to be set.

### Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'valstat'
plot(x,simobject=NULL,statistic="sindex",
      xlim=NULL,ylim=c(0,1),
      nmethods=length(x)-5,
      col=1:nmethods,cex=1,pch=c("c","f","a","n"),
      simcol=rep(grey(0.7),4),
      shift=c(-0.1,-1/3,1/3,0.1),include.othernc=NULL,...)
```

```
## S3 method for class 'valstat'
print(x,statistics=x$statistics,
      nmethods=length(x)-5,aggregate=FALSE,
      weights=NULL,digits=2,
      include.othernc=NULL,...)
```

### Arguments

x	object of class "valstat", such as sublists stat, qstat, sstat of <a href="#">clusterbenchstats-output</a> .
simobject	list of simulation results as produced by <a href="#">randomclustersim</a> and documented there; typically sublist sim of <a href="#">clusterbenchstats-output</a> .
statistic	one of "avewithin", "mnnd", "variation", "diameter", "gap", "sindex", "minsep", "asw", "dindex", "highdgap", "pg", "withinss", "entropy", "pamc", "kdnorm", "kdunif", "dmode"; validation statistic to be plotted.
xlim	passed on to plot. Default is the range of all involved numbers of clusters, minimum minus 0.5 to maximum plus 0.5.
ylim	passed on to plot.
nmethods	integer. Number of clustering methods to involve (these are those from number 1 to nmethods specified in x\$name).

col	colours used for the different clustering methods.
cex	passed on to plot.
pch	vector of symbols for random clustering results from <a href="#">stupidkcentroids</a> , <a href="#">stupidkfn</a> , <a href="#">stupidkaven</a> , <a href="#">stupidknn</a> . To be passed on to plot.
simcol	vector of colours used for random clustering results in order <a href="#">stupidkcentroids</a> , <a href="#">stupidkfn</a> , <a href="#">stupidkaven</a> , <a href="#">stupidknn</a> .
shift	numeric vector. Indicates the amount to which the results from <a href="#">stupidkcentroids</a> , <a href="#">stupidkfn</a> , <a href="#">stupidkaven</a> , <a href="#">stupidknn</a> are plotted to the right of their respective number of clusters (negative numbers plot to the left).
include.othernc	this indicates whether methods should be included that estimated their number of clusters themselves and gave a result outside the standard range as given by <code>x\$minG</code> and <code>x\$maxG</code> . If not NULL, this is a list of integer vectors of length 2. The first number is the number of the clustering method (the order is determined by argument <code>x\$name</code> ), the second number is the number of clusters for those methods that estimate the number of clusters themselves and estimated a number outside the standard range. Normally what will be used here, if not NULL, is the output parameter <code>cm\$othernc</code> of <a href="#">clusterbenchstats</a> , see also <a href="#">cluster.magazine</a> .
statistics	vector of character strings specifying the validation statistics that will be included in the output (unless you want to restrict the output for some reason, the default should be fine).
aggregate	logical. If TRUE, an aggregate validation statistic will be computed as the weighted mean of the involved statistic. This requires <code>weights</code> to be set. In order for this to make sense, values of the validation statistics should be comparable, which is achieved by standardisation in <a href="#">clusterbenchstats</a> . Accordingly, <code>x</code> should be the <code>qstat</code> or <code>sstat</code> -component of the <a href="#">clusterbenchstats</a> -output rather than the <code>stat</code> -component.
weights	vector of numericals. Weights for computation of the aggregate statistic in case that <code>aggregate=TRUE</code> . The order of clustering methods corresponding to the weight vector is given by <code>x\$name</code> .
digits	minimal number of significant digits, passed on to <a href="#">print.table</a> .
...	no effect.

### Details

Whereas `print.valstat`, at least with `aggregate=TRUE` makes more sense for the `qstat` or `sstat`-component of the [clusterbenchstats](#)-output rather than the `stat`-component, `plot.valstat` should be run with the `stat`-component if `simobject` is specified, because the simulated cluster validity statistics are unstandardised and need to be compared with unstandardised values on the dataset of interest.

`print.valstat` will print all values for all validation indexes and the aggregated index (in case of `aggregate=TRUE` and `set weights` will be printed last.

### Value

`print.valstats` returns the results table as invisible object.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Hennig, C. (2019) Cluster validation by measurement of clustering characteristics relevant to the user. In C. H. Skiadas (ed.) *Data Analysis and Applications 1: Clustering and Regression, Modeling-estimating, Forecasting and Data Mining, Volume 2*, Wiley, New York 1-24, <https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.09282>

Akhanli, S. and Hennig, C. (2020) Calibrating and aggregating cluster validity indexes for context-adapted comparison of clusterings. *Statistics and Computing*, 30, 1523-1544, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11222-020-09958-2>, <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.01822>

**See Also**

[clusterbenchstats](#), [valstat.object](#), [cluster.magazine](#)

**Examples**

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(10, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
clustermethod=c("kmeansCBI", "hclustCBI", "hclustCBI")
clustermethodpars <- list()
clustermethodpars[[2]] <- clustermethodpars[[3]] <- list()
clustermethodpars[[2]]$method <- "ward.D2"
clustermethodpars[[3]]$method <- "single"
methodname <- c("kmeans", "ward", "single")
cbs <- clusterbenchstats(face, G=2:3, clustermethod=clustermethod,
  methodname=methodname, distmethod=rep(FALSE, 3),
  clustermethodpars=clustermethodpars, nnruns=2, kmrns=2, fnruns=2, avenruns=2)
plot(cbs$stat, cbs$sim)
plot(cbs$stat, cbs$sim, statistic="dindex")
plot(cbs$stat, cbs$sim, statistic="avewithin")
pcbs <- print(cbs$sstat, aggregate=TRUE, weights=c(1,0,0,0,0,1,0,0,0,0,0,1,0,0,0,0))
# Some of the values are "NaN" because due to the low number of runs of
# the stupid clustering methods there is no variation. If this happens
# in a real application, nnruns etc. should be chosen higher than 2.
# Also useallg=TRUE in clusterbenchstats may help.
#
# Finding the best aggregated value:
mpcbs <- as.matrix(pcbs[[17]][,-1])
which(mpcbs==max(mpcbs), arr.ind=TRUE)
# row=1 refers to the first clustering method kmeansCBI,
# col=2 refers to the second number of clusters, which is 3 in g=2:3.
```



plotcluster

*Discriminant projection plot.***Description**

Plots to distinguish given classes by ten available projection methods. Includes classical discriminant coordinates, methods to project differences in mean and covariance structure, asymmetric methods (separation of a homogeneous class from a heterogeneous one), local neighborhood-based methods and methods based on robust covariance matrices. One-dimensional data is plotted against the cluster number.

**Usage**

```
plotcluster(x, clvecd, clnum=NULL,
            method=ifelse(is.null(clnum), "dc", "awc"),
            bw=FALSE,
            ignorepoints=FALSE, ignorenum=0, pointsbyclvecd=TRUE,
            xlab=NULL, ylab=NULL,
            pch=NULL, col=NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

x	the data matrix; a numerical object which can be coerced to a matrix.
clvecd	vector of class numbers which can be coerced into integers; length must equal nrow(xd).
method	one of <b>"dc"</b> usual discriminant coordinates, see <a href="#">discrcoord</a> , <b>"bc"</b> Bhattacharyya coordinates, first coordinate showing mean differences, second showing covariance matrix differences, see <a href="#">batcoord</a> , <b>"vbc"</b> variance dominated Bhattacharyya coordinates, see <a href="#">batcoord</a> , <b>"mvdc"</b> added mean and variance differences optimizing coordinates, see <a href="#">mvdcoord</a> , <b>"adc"</b> asymmetric discriminant coordinates, see <a href="#">adcoord</a> , <b>"awc"</b> asymmetric discriminant coordinates with weighted observations, see <a href="#">awcoord</a> , <b>"arc"</b> asymmetric discriminant coordinates with weighted observations and robust MCD-covariance matrix, see <a href="#">awcoord</a> , <b>"nc"</b> neighborhood based coordinates, see <a href="#">ncoord</a> , <b>"wnc"</b> neighborhood based coordinates with weighted neighborhoods, see <a href="#">ncoord</a> , <b>"anc"</b> asymmetric neighborhood based coordinates, see <a href="#">ancoord</a> . Note that "bc", "vbc", "adc", "awc", "arc" and "anc" assume that there are only two classes.
clnum	integer. Number of the class which is attempted to plot homogeneously by "asymmetric methods", which are the methods assuming that there are only two classes, as indicated above. clnum is ignored for methods "dc" and "nc".

bw	logical. If TRUE, the classes are distinguished by symbols, and the default color is black/white. If FALSE, the classes are distinguished by colors, and the default symbol is pch=1.
ignorepoints	logical. If TRUE, points with label ignorenum in clvecd are ignored in the computation for method and are only projected afterwards onto the resulting units. If pch=NULL, the plot symbol for these points is "N".
ignorenum	one of the potential values of the components of clvecd. Only has effect if ignorepoints=TRUE, see above.
pointsbyclvecd	logical. If TRUE and pch=NULL and/or col=NULL, some hopefully suitable plot symbols (numbers and letters) and colors are chosen to distinguish the values of clvecd, starting with "1"/"black" for the cluster with the smallest clvecd-code (note that colors for clusters with numbers larger than minimum number +3 are drawn at random from all available colors). FALSE produces potentially less reasonable (but nonrandom) standard colors and symbols if method is "dc" or "nc", and will only distinguish whether clvecd=c1num or not for the other methods.
xlab	label for x-axis. If NULL, a default text is used.
ylab	label for y-axis. If NULL, a default text is used.
pch	plotting symbol, see <a href="#">par</a> . If NULL, the default is used.
col	plotting color, see <a href="#">par</a> . If NULL, the default is used.
...	additional parameters passed to plot or the projection methods.

### Note

For some of the asymmetric methods, the area in the plot occupied by the "homogeneous class" (see c1num above) may be very small, and it may make sense to run plotcluster a second time specifying plot parameters xlim and ylim in a suitable way. It often makes sense to magnify the plot region containing the homogeneous class in this way so that its separation from the rest can be seen more clearly.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### References

- Hennig, C. (2004) Asymmetric linear dimension reduction for classification. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics* 13, 930-945 .
- Hennig, C. (2005) A method for visual cluster validation. In: Weihs, C. and Gaul, W. (eds.): *Classification - The Ubiquitous Challenge*. Springer, Heidelberg 2005, 153-160.
- Seber, G. A. F. (1984). *Multivariate Observations*. New York: Wiley.
- Fukunaga (1990). *Introduction to Statistical Pattern Recognition* (2nd ed.). Boston: Academic Press.

**See Also**

[discrcoord](#), [batcoord](#), [mvdcoord](#), [adcoord](#), [awcoord](#), [ncoord](#), [ancoord](#).

[discrproj](#) is an interface to all these projection methods.

[rFace](#) for generation of the example data used below.

**Examples**

```
set.seed(4634)
face <- rFace(300,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0)
grface <- as.integer(attr(face,"grouping"))
plotcluster(face,grface)
plotcluster(face,grface==1)
plotcluster(face,grface, clnum=1, method="vbc")
```

---

prediction.strength     *Prediction strength for estimating number of clusters*

---

**Description**

Computes the prediction strength of a clustering of a dataset into different numbers of components. The prediction strength is defined according to Tibshirani and Walther (2005), who recommend to choose as optimal number of cluster the largest number of clusters that leads to a prediction strength above 0.8 or 0.9. See details.

Various clustering methods can be used, see argument `clustermethod`. In Tibshirani and Walther (2005), only classification to the nearest centroid is discussed, but more methods are offered here, see argument `classification`.

**Usage**

```
prediction.strength(xdata, Gmin=2, Gmax=10, M=50,
                   clustermethod=kmeansCBI,
                   classification="centroid", centroidname = NULL,
                   cutoff=0.8, nnk=1,
                   distances=inherits(xdata,"dist"),count=FALSE,...)
## S3 method for class 'predstr'
print(x, ...)
```

**Arguments**

<code>xdata</code>	data (something that can be coerced into a matrix).
<code>Gmin</code>	integer. Minimum number of clusters. Note that the prediction strength for 1 cluster is trivially 1, which is automatically included if <code>GMin&gt;1</code> . Therefore <code>GMin&lt;2</code> is useless.
<code>Gmax</code>	integer. Maximum number of clusters.
<code>M</code>	integer. Number of times the dataset is divided into two halves.

clustermethod	an interface function (the function name, not a string containing the name, has to be provided!). This defines the clustering method. See the "Details"-section of <a href="#">clusterboot</a> and <a href="#">kmeansCBI</a> for the format. Clustering methods for prediction.strength must have a k-argument for the number of clusters, must operate on n times p data matrices and must otherwise follow the specifications in <a href="#">clusterboot</a> . Note that prediction.strength won't work with CBI-functions that implicitly already estimate the number of clusters such as <a href="#">pamkCBI</a> ; use <a href="#">claraCBI</a> if you want to run it for pam/clara clustering.
classification	string. This determines how non-clustered points are classified to given clusters. Options are explained in <a href="#">classifnp</a> and <a href="#">classifdist</a> , the latter for dissimilarity data. Certain classification methods are connected to certain clustering methods. <code>classification="averagedist"</code> is recommended for average linkage, <code>classification="centroid"</code> is recommended for k-means, clara and pam (with distances it will work with <a href="#">claraCBI</a> only), <code>classification="knn"</code> with <code>nnk=1</code> is recommended for single linkage and <code>classification="qda"</code> is recommended for Gaussian mixtures with flexible covariance matrices.
centroidname	string. Indicates the name of the component of <code>CBIoutput\$result</code> that contains the cluster centroids in case of <code>classification="centroid"</code> , where <code>CBIoutput</code> is the output object of <code>clustermethod</code> . If <code>clustermethod</code> is <code>kmeansCBI</code> or <code>claraCBI</code> , centroids are recognised automatically if <code>centroidname=NULL</code> . If <code>centroidname=NULL</code> and <code>distances=FALSE</code> , cluster means are computed as the cluster centroids.
cutoff	numeric between 0 and 1. The optimal number of clusters is the maximum one with prediction strength above cutoff.
nnk	number of nearest neighbours if <code>classification="knn"</code> , see <a href="#">classifnp</a> .
distances	logical. If TRUE, data will be interpreted as dissimilarity matrix, passed on to clustering methods as "dist"-object, and <a href="#">classifdist</a> will be used for classification.
count	logical. TRUE will print current number of clusters and simulation run number on the screen.
x	object of class <code>predstr</code> .
...	arguments to be passed on to the clustering method.

### Details

The prediction strength for a certain number of clusters  $k$  under a random partition of the dataset in halves  $A$  and  $B$  is defined as follows. Both halves are clustered with  $k$  clusters. Then the points of  $A$  are classified to the clusters of  $B$ . In the original paper this is done by assigning every observation in  $A$  to the closest cluster centroid in  $B$  (corresponding to `classification="centroid"`), but other methods are possible, see [classifnp](#). A pair of points  $A$  in the same  $A$ -cluster is defined to be correctly predicted if both points are classified into the same cluster on  $B$ . The same is done with the points of  $B$  relative to the clustering on  $A$ . The prediction strength for each of the clusterings is the minimum (taken over all clusters) relative frequency of correctly predicted pairs of points of that cluster. The final mean prediction strength statistic is the mean over all  $2M$  clusterings.

**Value**

prediction.strength gives out an object of class predstr, which is a list with components

predcorr	list of vectors of length M with relative frequencies of correct predictions (clusterwise minimum). Every list entry refers to a certain number of clusters.
mean.pred	means of predcorr for all numbers of clusters.
optimalk	optimal number of clusters.
cutoff	see above.
method	a string identifying the clustering method.
Gmax	see above.
M	see above.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Tibshirani, R. and Walther, G. (2005) Cluster Validation by Prediction Strength, *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, 14, 511-528.

**See Also**

[kmeansCBI](#), [classifnp](#)

**Examples**

```
options(digits=3)
set.seed(98765)
iriss <- iris[sample(150,20),-5]
prediction.strength(iriss,2,3,M=3)
prediction.strength(iriss,2,3,M=3,clustermethod=claraCBI)
# The examples are fast, but of course M should really be larger.
```

---

randcmatrix

*Random partition matrix*

---

**Description**

For use within regmix. Generates a random 0-1-matrix with n rows and cln columns so that every row contains exactly one one and every columns contains at least p+3 ones.

**Usage**

```
randcmatrix(n,cln,p)
```

**Arguments**

n                    positive integer. Number of rows.  
c1n                  positive integer. Number of columns.  
p                    positive integer. See above.

**Value**

An  $n \times c1n$ -matrix.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**See Also**

[regmix](#)

**Examples**

```
set.seed(111)
randcmatrix(10,2,1)
```

---

randconf

*Generate a sample indicator vector*

---

**Description**

Generates a logical vector of length  $n$  with  $p$  TRUEs.

**Usage**

```
randconf(n, p)
```

**Arguments**

n                    positive integer.  
p                    positive integer.

**Value**

A logical vector.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**See Also**[sample](#)**Examples**

```
randconf(10,3)
```

---

randomclustersim	<i>Simulation of validity indexes based on random clusterings</i>
------------------	---

---

**Description**

For a given dataset this simulates random clusterings using [stupidkcentroids](#), [stupidknn](#), [stupidkfn](#), and [stupidkaven](#). It then computes and stores a set of cluster validity indexes for every clustering.

**Usage**

```
randomclustersim(datadist, datanp=NULL, npstats=FALSE, useboot=FALSE,
                 bootmethod="nselectboot",
                 bootruns=25,
                 G, nnruns=100, kmruns=100, fnruns=100, avenruns=100,
                 nnk=4, dnnk=2,
                 pamcrit=TRUE,
                 multicore=FALSE, cores=detectCores()-1, monitor=TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

datadist	distances on which validation-measures are based, dist object or distance matrix.
datanp	optional observations times variables data matrix, see npstats.
npstats	logical. If TRUE, <a href="#">distrsimilarity</a> is called and the two statistics computed there are added to the output. These are based on datanp and require datanp to be specified.
useboot	logical. If TRUE, a stability index (either nselectboot or prediction.strength) will be involved.
bootmethod	either "nselectboot" or "prediction.strength"; stability index to be used if useboot=TRUE.
bootruns	integer. Number of resampling runs. If useboot=TRUE, passed on as B to nselectboot or M to prediction.strength.
G	vector of integers. Numbers of clusters to consider.
nnruns	integer. Number of runs of <a href="#">stupidknn</a> .
kmruns	integer. Number of runs of <a href="#">stupidkcentroids</a> .
fnruns	integer. Number of runs of <a href="#">stupidkfn</a> .
avenruns	integer. Number of runs of <a href="#">stupidkaven</a> .

nnk	nnk-argument to be passed on to <a href="#">cqcluster.stats</a> .
dnnk	nnk-argument to be passed on to <a href="#">distrsimilarity</a> .
pamcrit	pamcrit-argument to be passed on to <a href="#">cqcluster.stats</a> .
multicore	logical. If TRUE, parallel computing is used through the function <a href="#">mclapply</a> from package <a href="#">parallel</a> ; read warnings there if you intend to use this; it won't work on Windows.
cores	integer. Number of cores for parallelisation.
monitor	logical. If TRUE, it will print some runtime information.

## Value

List with components

nn	list, indexed by number of clusters. Every entry is a data frame with nnruns observations for every simulation run of <a href="#">stupidknn</a> . The variables of the data frame are <a href="#">avewithin</a> , <a href="#">mnnd</a> , <a href="#">cvnnd</a> , <a href="#">maxdiameter</a> , <a href="#">widestgap</a> , <a href="#">sindex</a> , <a href="#">minsep</a> , <a href="#">asw</a> , <a href="#">dindex</a> , <a href="#">denscut</a> , <a href="#">highdgap</a> , <a href="#">pearsongamma</a> , <a href="#">withinss</a> , <a href="#">entropy</a> , if <a href="#">pamcrit</a> =TRUE also <a href="#">pamc</a> , if <a href="#">npstats</a> =TRUE also <a href="#">kdnorm</a> , <a href="#">kdunif</a> . All these are cluster validation indexes; documented as values of <a href="#">clustatsum</a> .
fn	list, indexed by number of clusters. Every entry is a data frame with fnruns observations for every simulation run of <a href="#">stupidkfn</a> . The variables of the data frame are <a href="#">avewithin</a> , <a href="#">mnnd</a> , <a href="#">cvnnd</a> , <a href="#">maxdiameter</a> , <a href="#">widestgap</a> , <a href="#">sindex</a> , <a href="#">minsep</a> , <a href="#">asw</a> , <a href="#">dindex</a> , <a href="#">denscut</a> , <a href="#">highdgap</a> , <a href="#">pearsongamma</a> , <a href="#">withinss</a> , <a href="#">entropy</a> , if <a href="#">pamcrit</a> =TRUE also <a href="#">pamc</a> , if <a href="#">npstats</a> =TRUE also <a href="#">kdnorm</a> , <a href="#">kdunif</a> . All these are cluster validation indexes; documented as values of <a href="#">clustatsum</a> .
aven	list, indexed by number of clusters. Every entry is a data frame with avenruns observations for every simulation run of <a href="#">stupidkaven</a> . The variables of the data frame are <a href="#">avewithin</a> , <a href="#">mnnd</a> , <a href="#">cvnnd</a> , <a href="#">maxdiameter</a> , <a href="#">widestgap</a> , <a href="#">sindex</a> , <a href="#">minsep</a> , <a href="#">asw</a> , <a href="#">dindex</a> , <a href="#">denscut</a> , <a href="#">highdgap</a> , <a href="#">pearsongamma</a> , <a href="#">withinss</a> , <a href="#">entropy</a> , if <a href="#">pamcrit</a> =TRUE also <a href="#">pamc</a> , if <a href="#">npstats</a> =TRUE also <a href="#">kdnorm</a> , <a href="#">kdunif</a> . All these are cluster validation indexes; documented as values of <a href="#">clustatsum</a> .
km	list, indexed by number of clusters. Every entry is a data frame with kmruns observations for every simulation run of <a href="#">stupidkcentroids</a> . The variables of the data frame are <a href="#">avewithin</a> , <a href="#">mnnd</a> , <a href="#">cvnnd</a> , <a href="#">maxdiameter</a> , <a href="#">widestgap</a> , <a href="#">sindex</a> , <a href="#">minsep</a> , <a href="#">asw</a> , <a href="#">dindex</a> , <a href="#">denscut</a> , <a href="#">highdgap</a> , <a href="#">pearsongamma</a> , <a href="#">withinss</a> , <a href="#">entropy</a> , if <a href="#">pamcrit</a> =TRUE also <a href="#">pamc</a> , if <a href="#">npstats</a> =TRUE also <a href="#">kdnorm</a> , <a href="#">kdunif</a> . All these are cluster validation indexes; documented as values of <a href="#">clustatsum</a> .
nnruns	number of involved runs of <a href="#">stupidknn</a> ,
fnruns	number of involved runs of <a href="#">stupidkfn</a> ,
avenruns	number of involved runs of <a href="#">stupidkaven</a> ,
kmruns	number of involved runs of <a href="#">stupidkcentroids</a> ,
boot	if <a href="#">useboot</a> =TRUE, stability value; <a href="#">stabk</a> for method <a href="#">nselectboot</a> ; <a href="#">mean.pred</a> for method <a href="#">prediction.strength</a> .



**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Hennig, C. (2019) Cluster validation by measurement of clustering characteristics relevant to the user. In C. H. Skiadas (ed.) *Data Analysis and Applications 1: Clustering and Regression, Modeling-estimating, Forecasting and Data Mining, Volume 2*, Wiley, New York 1-24, <https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.09282>

Akhanli, S. and Hennig, C. (2020) Calibrating and aggregating cluster validity indexes for context-adapted comparison of clusterings. *Statistics and Computing*, 30, 1523-1544, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11222-020-09958-2>, <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.01822>

**See Also**

[stupidkcentroids](#), [stupidknn](#), [stupidkfn](#), [stupidkaven](#), [clustatsum](#)

**Examples**

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(10, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
rmx <- randomclustersim(dist(face), datanp=face, npstats=TRUE, G=2:3,
  nnruns=2, kmruns=2, fnruns=1, avenruns=1, nnk=2)
## Not run:
rmx$km # Produces slightly different but basically identical results on ATLAS

## End(Not run)
rmx$aven
rmx$fn
rmx$nn
```

---

regmix

*Mixture Model ML for Clusterwise Linear Regression*

---

**Description**

Computes an ML-estimator for clusterwise linear regression under a regression mixture model with Normal errors. Parameters are proportions, regression coefficients and error variances, all independent of the values of the independent variable, and all may differ for different clusters. Computation is by the EM-algorithm. The number of clusters is estimated via the Bayesian Information Criterion (BIC). Note that package `flexmix` has more sophisticated tools to do the same thing and is recommended. The functions are kept in here only for compatibility reasons.

**Usage**

```
regmix(indep, dep, ir=1, nclust=1:7, icrit=1.e-5, minsig=1.e-6, warnings=FALSE)
```

```
regem(indep, dep, m, cln, icrit=1.e-5, minsig=1.e-6, warnings=FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

indep	numerical matrix or vector. Independent variables.
dep	numerical vector. Dependent variable.
ir	positive integer. Number of iteration runs for every number of clusters.
nclust	vector of positive integers. Numbers of clusters.
icrit	positive numerical. Stopping criterion for the iterations (difference of loglikelihoods).
minsig	positive numerical. Minimum value for the variance parameters (likelihood is unbounded if variances are allowed to converge to 0).
warnings	logical. If TRUE, warnings are given during the EM iteration in case of collinear regressors, too small mixture components and error variances smaller than minimum. In the former two cases, the algorithm is terminated without a result, but an optimal solution is still computed from other algorithm runs (if there are others). In the latter case, the corresponding variance is set to the minimum.
cln	positive integer. (Single) number of clusters.
m	matrix of positive numerals. Number of columns must be cln. Number of rows must be number of data points. Columns must add up to 1. Initial configuration for the EM iteration in terms of a probability vector for every point which gives its degree of membership to every cluster. As generated by <a href="#">randcmatrix</a> .

**Details**

The result of the EM iteration depends on the initial configuration, which is generated randomly by [randcmatrix](#) for `regmix`. `regmix` calls `regem`. To provide the initial configuration manually, use parameter `m` of `regem` directly. Take a look at the example about how to generate `m` if you want to specify initial parameters.

The original paper DeSarbo and Cron (1988) suggests the AIC for estimating the number of clusters. The use of the BIC is advocated by Wedel and DeSarbo (1995). The BIC is defined here as  $2 \cdot \text{loglik} - \log(n) \cdot ((p+3) \cdot \text{cln} - 1)$ ,  $p$  being the number of independent variables, i.e., the larger the better.

See the entry for the input parameter `warnings` for the treatment of several numerical problems.

**Value**

`regmix` returns a list containing the components `clnopt`, `loglik`, `bic`, `coef`, `var`, `eps`, `z`, `g`.

`regem` returns a list containing the components `loglik`, `coef`, `var`, `z`, `g`, `warn`.

`clnopt`            optimal number of clusters according to the BIC.

loglik	loglikelihood for the optimal model.
bic	vector of BIC values for all numbers of clusters in nclust.
coef	matrix of regression coefficients. First row: intercept parameter. Second row: parameter of first independent variable and so on. Columns corresponding to clusters.
var	vector of error variance estimators for the clusters.
eps	vector of cluster proportion estimators.
z	matrix of estimated a posteriori probabilities of the points (rows) to be generated by the clusters (columns). Compare input argument m.
g	integer vector of estimated cluster numbers for the points (via argmax over z).
warn	logical. TRUE if one of the estimated clusters has too few points and/or collinear regressors.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### References

- DeSarbo, W. S. and Cron, W. L. (1988) A maximum likelihood methodology for clusterwise linear regression, *Journal of Classification* 5, 249-282.
- Wedel, M. and DeSarbo, W. S. (1995) A mixture likelihood approach for generalized linear models, *Journal of Classification* 12, 21-56.

### See Also

Regression mixtures can also (and probably better) be computed with the flexmix package, see [flexmix](#). (When I first write the regmix-function, flexmix didn't exist.)

[fixreg](#) for fixed point clusters for clusterwise linear regression.

[EMclust](#) for Normal mixture model fitting (non-regression).

### Examples

```
## Not run:
# This apparently gives slightly different
# but data-analytically fine results
# on some versions of R.
set.seed(12234)
data(tonedata)
attach(tonedata)
rmt1 <- regmix(stretchratio,tuned,nclust=1:2)
# nclust=1:2 makes the example fast;
# a more serious application would rather use the default.
rmt1$g
round(rmt1$bic,digits=2)
# start with initial parameter values
```

```

c1n <- 3
n <- 150
initcoef <- cbind(c(2,0),c(0,1),c(0,2.5))
initvar <- c(0.001,0.0001,0.5)
initedps <- c(0.4,0.3,0.3)
# computation of m from initial parameters
m <- matrix(nrow=n, ncol=c1n)
stm <- numeric(0)
for (i in 1:c1n)
  for (j in 1:n){
    m[j,i] <- initedps[i]*dnorm(tuned[j],mean=initcoef[1,i]+
      initcoef[2,i]*stretchratio[j], sd=sqrt(initvar[i]))
  }
  for (j in 1:n){
    stm[j] <- sum(m[j,])
    for (i in 1:c1n)
      m[j,i] <- m[j,i]/stm[j]
  }
rmt2 <- regem(stretchratio, tuned, m, c1n)

## End(Not run)

```

---

rFace

*"Face-shaped" clustered benchmark datasets*


---

## Description

Generates "face-shaped" clustered benchmark datasets. This is based on a collaboration with Martin Maechler.

## Usage

```
rFace(n, p = 6, nrep.top = 2, smile.coef = 0.6, dMoNo = 1.2, dNoEy = 1)
```

## Arguments

n	integer greater or equal to 10. Number of points.
p	integer greater or equal to 2. Dimension.
nrep.top	integer. Number of repetitions of the hair-top point.
smile.coef	numeric. Coefficient for quadratic term used for generation of mouth-points. Positive values=>smile.
dMoNo	number. Distance from mouth to nose.
dNoEy	number. Minimum vertical distance from mouth to eyes.

**Details**

The function generates a nice benchmark example for cluster analysis. There are six "clusters" in this data, of which the first five are clearly homogeneous patterns, but with different distributional shapes and different qualities of separation. The clusters are distinguished only in the first two dimensions. The attribute grouping is a factor giving the cluster numbers, see below. The sixth group of points corresponds to some hairs, and is rather a collection of outliers than a cluster in itself. This group contains `nrep.top+2` points. Of the remaining points, 20% belong to cluster 1, the chin (quadratic function plus noise). 10% belong to cluster 2, the right eye (Gaussian). 30% belong to cluster 3, the mouth (Gaussian/squared Gaussian). 20% belong to cluster 4, the nose (Gaussian/gamma), and 20% belong to cluster 5, the left eye (uniform).

The distributions of the further variables are homogeneous over all points. The third dimension is exponentially distributed, the fourth dimension is Cauchy distributed, all further distributions are Gaussian.

Please consider the source code for exact generation of the clusters.

**Value**

An n times p numeric matrix with attributes

`grouping` a factor giving the cluster memberships of the points.  
`indexlist` a list of six vectors containing the indices of points belonging to the six groups.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**Examples**

```
set.seed(4634)
face <- rFace(600,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0)
grface <- as.integer(attr(face,"grouping"))
plot(face, col = grface)
# pairs(face, col = grface, main = "rFace(600,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0)")
```

---

ridgeline

*Ridgeline computation*


---

**Description**

Computes  $(\alpha * \Sigma_1^{-1} + (1 - \alpha) * \Sigma_2^{-1})^{-1} * \alpha * (\Sigma_1^{-1} * \mu_1) + (1 - \alpha) * (\Sigma_2^{-1} * \mu_2)$  as required for the computation of the ridgeline (Ray and Lindsay, 2005) to find all density extrema of a two-component Gaussian mixture with mean vectors `mu1` and `mu2` and covariance matrices `Sigma1`, `Sigma2`.

**Usage**

```
ridgeline(alpha, mu1, mu2, Sigma1, Sigma2)
```

**Arguments**

alpha	numeric between 0 and 1.
mu1	mean vector of component 1.
mu2	mean vector of component 2.
Sigma1	covariance matrix of component 1.
Sigma2	covariance matrix of component 2.

**Value**

A vector. See above.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Ray, S. and Lindsay, B. G. (2005) The Topography of Multivariate Normal Mixtures, *Annals of Statistics*, 33, 2042-2065.

**Examples**

```
ridgeline(0.5,c(1,1),c(2,5),diag(2),diag(2))
```

---

ridgeline.diagnosis    *Ridgeline plots, ratios and unimodality*

---

**Description**

Computes ridgeline ratios and unimodality checks for pairs of components given the parameters of a Gaussian mixture. Produces ridgeline plots.

**Usage**

```
ridgeline.diagnosis (propvector,muarray,Sigmaarray,  
                    k=length(propvector),  
                    ipairs="all", compute.ratio=TRUE,by=0.001,  
                    ratiocutoff=NULL,ridgelineplot="matrix")
```

**Arguments**

propvector	vector of component proportions. Length must be number of components, and must sum up to 1.
muarray	matrix of component means (different components are in different columns).
Sigmaarray	three dimensional array with component covariance matrices (the third dimension refers to components).
k	integer. Number of components.
ipairs	"all" or list of vectors of two integers. If ipairs="all", computations are carried out for all pairs of components. Otherwise, ipairs gives the pairs of components for which computations are carried out.
compute.ratio	logical. If TRUE, a matrix of ridgeline ratios is computed, see Hennig (2010a).
by	real between 0 and 1. Interval width for density computation along the ridgeline.
ratio.cutoff	real between 0 and 1. If not NULL, the connection.matrix (see below) is computed by checking whether ridgeline ratios between components are below ratio.cutoff.
ridgelineplot	one of "none", "matrix", "pairwise". If "matrix", a matrix of pairwise ridgeline plots (see Hennig 2010b) will be plotted. If "pairwise", pairwise ridgeline plots are plotted (you may want to set par(ask=TRUE) to see them all). No plotting if "none".

**Value**

A list with components

merged.clusters

vector of integers, stating for every mixture component the number of the cluster of components that would be merged by merging connectivity components of the graph specified by connection.matrix.

connection.matrix

zero-one matrix, in which a one means that the mixture of the corresponding pair of components of the original mixture is either unimodal (if ratio.cutoff=NULL) or that their ridgeline ratio is above ratio.cutoff. If ipairs!="all", ignored pairs always have 0 in this matrix, same for ratio.matrix.

ratio.matrix

matrix with entries between 0 and 1, giving the ridgeline ratio, which is the density minimum of the mixture of the corresponding pair of components along the ridgeline divided by the minimum of the two maxima closest to the beginning and the end of the ridgeline.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

## References

Hennig, C. (2010a) Methods for merging Gaussian mixture components, *Advances in Data Analysis and Classification*, 4, 3-34.

Hennig, C. (2010b) Ridgeline plot and clusterwise stability as tools for merging Gaussian mixture components. To appear in *Classification as a Tool for Research*, Proceedings of IFCS 2009.

Ray, S. and Lindsay, B. G. (2005) The Topography of Multivariate Normal Mixtures, *Annals of Statistics*, 33, 2042-2065.

## See Also

[ridgeline](#), [dridgeline](#), [piridge](#), [piridge.zeros](#)

## Examples

```
muarray <- cbind(c(0,0),c(0,0.1),c(10,10))
sigmaarray <- array(c(diag(2),diag(2),diag(2)),dim=c(2,2,3))
rd <-
ridgeline.diagnosis(c(0.5,0.3,0.2),muarray,sigmaarray,ridgelineplot="matrix",by=0.1)
# Much slower but more precise with default by=0.001.
```

---

simmatrix

*Extracting intersections between clusters from fpc-object*

---

## Description

Extracts the information about the size of the intersections between representative Fixed Point Clusters (FPCs) of stable groups from the output of the FPC-functions [fixreg](#) and [fixmahal](#).

## Usage

```
simmatrix(fpcobj)
```

## Arguments

fpcobj            an object of class rfpc or mfpc.

## Value

A non-negative real-valued vector giving the number of points in the intersections of the representative FPCs of stable groups.

## Note

The intersection between representative FPCs no. i and j is at position [sseg\(i, j\)](#).



**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**See Also**

[fixmahal](#), [fixreg](#), [sseg](#)

**Examples**

```
set.seed(190000)
data(tonedata)
# Note: If you do not use the installed package, replace this by
# tonedata <- read.table("(path/)tonedata.txt", header=TRUE)
attach(tonedata)
tonefix <- fixreg(stretchratio,tuned,mtf=1,ir=20)
simmatrix(tonefix)[sseg(2,3)]
```

---

solvecov

*Inversion of (possibly singular) symmetric matrices*

---

**Description**

Tries to invert a matrix by `solve`. If this fails because of singularity, an eigenvector decomposition is computed, and eigenvalues below  $1/\text{cmax}$  are replaced by  $1/\text{cmax}$ , i.e., `cmax` will be the corresponding eigenvalue of the inverted matrix.

**Usage**

```
solvecov(m, cmax = 1e+10)
```

**Arguments**

`m` a numeric symmetric matrix.  
`cmax` a positive value, see above.

**Value**

A list with the following components:

`inv` the inverted matrix  
`coll` TRUE if `solve` failed because of singularity.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**See Also**

[solve](#), [eigen](#)

**Examples**

```
x <- c(1,0,0,1,0,1,0,0,1)
dim(x) <- c(3,3)
solvecov(x)
```

---

sseg

*Position in a similarity vector*

---

**Description**

sseg(i, j) gives the position of the similarity of objects i and j in the similarity vectors produced by fixreg and fixmahal. sseg should only be used as an auxiliary function in fixreg and fixmahal.

**Usage**

```
sseg(i, j)
```

**Arguments**

i                    positive integer.  
j                    positive integer.

**Value**

A positive integer.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**Examples**

```
sseg(3,4)
```

---

`stupidkaven`*Stupid average dissimilarity random clustering*

---

**Description**

Picks  $k$  random starting points from given dataset to initialise  $k$  clusters. Then, one by one, the point not yet assigned to any cluster with smallest average dissimilarity to the points of any already existing cluster is assigned to that cluster, until all points are assigned. This is a random version of average linkage clustering, see Akhanli and Hennig (2020).

**Usage**

```
stupidkaven(d,k)
```

**Arguments**

<code>d</code>	dist-object or dissimilarity matrix.
<code>k</code>	integer. Number of clusters.

**Value**

The clustering vector (values 1 to  $k$ , length number of objects behind `d`),

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Akhanli, S. and Hennig, C. (2020) Calibrating and aggregating cluster validity indexes for context-adapted comparison of clusterings. *Statistics and Computing*, 30, 1523-1544, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11222-020-09958-2>, <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.01822>

**See Also**

[stupidkcentroids](#), [stupidknn](#), [stupidkfn](#)

**Examples**

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(200, dMoNo=2, dNoEy=0, p=2)
stupidkaven(dist(face), 3)
```

---

stupidkcentroids      *Stupid k-centroids random clustering*

---

### Description

Picks k random centroids from given dataset and assigns every point to closest centroid. This is called stupid k-centroids in Hennig (2019).

### Usage

```
stupidkcentroids(xdata, k, distances = inherits(xdata, "dist"))
```

### Arguments

xdata	cases*variables data, dist-object or dissimilarity matrix, see distances.
k	integer. Number of clusters.
distances	logical. If TRUE, xdata is interpreted as distances.

### Value

A list with components

partition	vector of integers 1 to k, of length equal to number of objects, indicates to which cluster an object belongs.
centroids	vector of integers of length k, indicating the centroids of the clusters (observation number).
distances	as argument distances.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### References

Hennig, C. (2019) Cluster validation by measurement of clustering characteristics relevant to the user. In C. H. Skiadas (ed.) *Data Analysis and Applications 1: Clustering and Regression, Modeling-estimating, Forecasting and Data Mining, Volume 2*, Wiley, New York 1-24, <https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.09282>

Akhanli, S. and Hennig, C. (2020) Calibrating and aggregating cluster validity indexes for context-adapted comparison of clusterings. *Statistics and Computing*, 30, 1523-1544, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11222-020-09958-2>, <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.01822>

### See Also

[stupidknn](#), [stupidkfn](#), [stupidkaven](#)

**Examples**

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(200,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0,p=2)
stupidkcentroids(dist(face),3)
```

---

`stupidkfn`*Stupid farthest neighbour random clustering*

---

**Description**

Picks  $k$  random starting points from given dataset to initialise  $k$  clusters. Then, one by one, a point not yet assigned to any cluster is assigned to that cluster, until all points are assigned. The point/cluster pair to be used is picked according to the smallest distance of a point to the farthest point to it in any of the already existing clusters as in complete linkage clustering, see Akhanli and Hennig (2020).

**Usage**

```
stupidkfn(d,k)
```

**Arguments**

<code>d</code>	dist-object or dissimilarity matrix.
<code>k</code>	integer. Number of clusters.

**Value**

The clustering vector (values 1 to  $k$ , length number of objects behind `d`),

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Akhanli, S. and Hennig, C. (2020) Calibrating and aggregating cluster validity indexes for context-adapted comparison of clusterings. *Statistics and Computing*, 30, 1523-1544, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11222-020-09958-2>, <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.01822>

**See Also**

[stupidkcentroids](#), [stupidknn](#), [stupidkaven](#)

## Examples

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(200,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0,p=2)
stupidkfn(dist(face),3)
```

---

stupidknn

*Stupid nearest neighbour random clustering*

---

## Description

Picks  $k$  random starting points from given dataset to initialise  $k$  clusters. Then, one by one, the point not yet assigned to any cluster that is closest to an already assigned point is assigned to that cluster, until all points are assigned. This is called stupid nearest neighbour clustering in Hennig (2019).

## Usage

```
stupidknn(d,k)
```

## Arguments

d	dist-object or dissimilarity matrix.
k	integer. Number of clusters.

## Value

The clustering vector (values 1 to  $k$ , length number of objects behind  $d$ ),

## Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

## References

Hennig, C. (2019) Cluster validation by measurement of clustering characteristics relevant to the user. In C. H. Skiadas (ed.) *Data Analysis and Applications 1: Clustering and Regression, Modeling-estimating, Forecasting and Data Mining, Volume 2*, Wiley, New York 1-24, <https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.09282>

Akhanli, S. and Hennig, C. (2020) Calibrating and aggregating cluster validity indexes for context-adapted comparison of clusterings. *Statistics and Computing*, 30, 1523-1544, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11222-020-09958-2>, <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.01822>

## See Also

[stupidkcentroids](#), [stupidkfn](#), [stupidkaven](#)

**Examples**

```
set.seed(20000)
options(digits=3)
face <- rFace(200,dMoNo=2,dNoEy=0,p=2)
stupidknn(dist(face),3)
```

---

tdecomp

*Root of singularity-corrected eigenvalue decomposition*

---

**Description**

Computes transposed eigenvectors of matrix *m* times diagonal of square root of eigenvalues so that eigenvalues smaller than 1e-6 are set to 1e-6.

**Usage**

```
tdecomp(m)
```

**Arguments**

*m* a symmetric matrix of minimum format 2\*2.

**Details**

Thought for use in `discrcoord` only.

**Value**

a matrix.

**Note**

Thought for use within `discrcoord` only.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**Examples**

```
x <- rnorm(10)
y <- rnorm(10)
z <- cov(cbind(x,y))
round(tdecomp(z),digits=2)
```

tonedata

*Tone perception data*

---

**Description**

The tone perception data stem from an experiment of Cohen (1980) and have been analyzed in de Veaux (1989). A pure fundamental tone was played to a trained musician. Electronically generated overtones were added, determined by a stretching ratio of `stretchratio`. `stretchratio=2.0` corresponds to the harmonic pattern usually heard in traditional definite pitched instruments. The musician was asked to tune an adjustable tone to the octave above the fundamental tone. `tuned` gives the ratio of the adjusted tone to the fundamental, i.e. `tuned=2.0` would be the correct tuning for all `stretchratio`-values. The data analyzed here belong to 150 trials with the same musician. In the original study, there were four further musicians.

**Usage**

```
data(tonedata)
```

**Format**

A data frame with 2 variables `stretchratio` and `tuned` and 150 cases.

**Source**

Cohen, E. A. (1980) *Inharmonic tone perception*. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, Stanford University

**References**

de Veaux, R. D. (1989) Mixtures of Linear Regressions, *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis* 8, 227-245.

---

unimodal.ind*Is a fitted density unimodal or not?*

---

**Description**

Checks whether a series of fitted density values (such as given out as y-component of `density`) is unimodal.

**Usage**

```
unimodal.ind(y)
```



**Arguments**

`y` numeric vector of fitted density values in order of increasing x-values such as given out as y-component of [density](#).

**Value**

Logical. TRUE if unimodal.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <christian.hennig@unibo.it> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**Examples**

```
unimodal.ind(c(1,3,3,4,2,1,0,0))
```

---

 valstat.object

---

*Cluster validation statistics - object*


---

**Description**

The objects of class "valstat" store cluster validation statistics from various clustering methods run with various numbers of clusters.

**Value**

A legitimate valstat object is a list. The format of the list relies on the number of involved clustering methods, `nmethods`, say, i.e., the length of the method-component explained below. The first `nmethods` elements of the valstat-list are just numbered. These are themselves lists that are numbered between 1 and the `maxG`-component defined below. Element `[[i]][[j]]` refers to the clustering from clustering method number `i` with number of clusters `j`. Every such element is a list with components `avewithin`, `mnnd`, `cvnnd`, `maxdiameter`, `widestgap`, `sindex`, `minsep`, `asw`, `dindex`, `denscut`, `highdgap`, `pearsongamma`, `withinss`, `entropy`: Further optional components are `pamc`, `kdnorm`, `kdunif`, `dmode`, `aggregated`. All these are cluster validation indexes, as follows.

<code>avewithin</code>	average distance within clusters (reweighted so that every observation, rather than every distance, has the same weight).
<code>mnnd</code>	average distance to <code>nnk</code> th nearest neighbour within cluster. ( <code>nnk</code> is a parameter of <a href="#">cqcluster.stats</a> , default 2.)
<code>cvnnd</code>	coefficient of variation of dissimilarities to <code>nnk</code> th nearest within-cluster neighbour, measuring uniformity of within-cluster densities, weighted over all clusters, see Sec. 3.7 of Hennig (2019). ( <code>nnk</code> is a parameter of <a href="#">cqcluster.stats</a> , default 2.)
<code>maxdiameter</code>	maximum cluster diameter.

widestgap	widest within-cluster gap or average of cluster-wise widest within-cluster gap, depending on parameter averagegap of <code>cqcluster.stats</code> , default FALSE.
sindex	separation index. Defined based on the distances for every point to the closest point not in the same cluster. The separation index is then the mean of the smallest proportion sepprob (parameter of <code>cqcluster.stats</code> , default 0.1) of these. See Hennig (2019).
minsep	minimum cluster separation.
asw	average silhouette width. See <a href="#">silhouette</a> .
dindex	this index measures to what extent the density decreases from the cluster mode to the outskirts; I-densdec in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019); low values are good.
denscut	this index measures whether cluster boundaries run through density valleys; I-densbound in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019); low values are good.
highdgap	this measures whether there is a large within-cluster gap with high density on both sides; I-highdgap in Sec. 3.6 of Hennig (2019); low values are good.
pearsongamma	correlation between distances and a 0-1-vector where 0 means same cluster, 1 means different clusters. "Normalized gamma" in Halkidi et al. (2001).
withinss	a generalisation of the within clusters sum of squares (k-means objective function), which is obtained if d is a Euclidean distance matrix. For general distance measures, this is half the sum of the within cluster squared dissimilarities divided by the cluster size.
entropy	entropy of the distribution of cluster memberships, see Meila(2007).
pamc	average distance to cluster centroid, which is the observation that minimises this average distance.
kdnorm	Kolmogorov distance between distribution of within-cluster Mahalanobis distances and appropriate chi-squared distribution, aggregated over clusters (I am grateful to Agustin Mayo-Iscar for the idea).
kdunif	Kolmogorov distance between distribution of distances to dnnkth nearest within-cluster neighbor and appropriate Gamma-distribution, see Byers and Raftery (1998), aggregated over clusters. dnnk is parameter nnk of <code>distrsimilarity</code> , corresponding to dnnk of <code>clusterbenchstats</code> .
dmode	aggregated density mode index equal to $0.75*dindex+0.25*highdgap$ after standardisation by <code>cgrestandard</code> .

Furthermore, a `valstat` object has the following list components:

maxG	maximum number of clusters.
minG	minimum number of clusters (list entries below that number are empty lists).
method	vector of names (character strings) of clustering CBI-functions, see <code>kmeansCBI</code> .
name	vector of names (character strings) of clustering methods. These can be user-chosen names (see argument <code>methodsnames</code> in <code>clusterbenchstats</code> ) and may distinguish different methods run by the same CBI-function but with different parameter values such as complete and average linkage for <code>hclustCBI</code> .
statistics	vector of names (character strings) of cluster validation indexes.

## GENERATION

These objects are generated as part of the `clusterbenchstats`-output.

## METHODS

The `valstat` class has methods for the following generic functions: `print`, `plot`, see `plot.valstat`.

## Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

## References

Hennig, C. (2019) Cluster validation by measurement of clustering characteristics relevant to the user. In C. H. Skiadas (ed.) *Data Analysis and Applications I: Clustering and Regression, Modeling-estimating, Forecasting and Data Mining, Volume 2*, Wiley, New York 1-24, <https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.09282>

Akhanli, S. and Hennig, C. (2020) Calibrating and aggregating cluster validity indexes for context-adapted comparison of clusterings. *Statistics and Computing*, 30, 1523-1544, <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11222-020-09958-2>, <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.01822>

## See Also

`clusterbenchstats`, `plot.valstat`.

---

weightplots

*Ordered posterior plots*

---

## Description

Ordered posterior plots for Gaussian mixture components, see Hennig (2010).

## Usage

```
weightplots(z, clusternumbers="all", clustercol=2,
            allcol=grey(0.2+((1:ncol(z))-1)*
                       0.6/(ncol(z)-1)),
            lty=rep(1,ncol(z)),clusterlwd=3,
            legendposition="none",
            weightcutoff=0.01,ask=TRUE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

<code>z</code>	matrix with rows corresponding to observations and columns corresponding to mixture components. Entries are probabilities that an observation has been generated by a mixture component. These will normally be estimated a posteriori probabilities, as generated as component <code>z</code> of the output object from <code>summary.mclustBIC</code> .
<code>clusternumbers</code>	"all" or vector of integers. Numbers of components for which plots are drawn.
<code>clustercol</code>	colour used for the main components for which a plot is drawn.
<code>allcol</code>	colours used for respective other components in plots in which they are not main components.
<code>lty</code>	line types for components.
<code>clusterlwd</code>	numeric. Line width for main component.
<code>legendposition</code>	"none" or vector with two coordinates in the plot, where a legend should be printed.
<code>weightcutoff</code>	numeric between 0 and 1. Observations are only taken into account for which the posterior probability for the main component is larger than this.
<code>ask</code>	logical. If TRUE, it sets <code>par(ask=TRUE)</code> in the beginning and <code>par(ask=FALSE)</code> after all plots were showed.
<code>...</code>	further parameters to be passed on to <code>legend</code> .

**Details**

Shows posterior probabilities for observations belonging to all mixture components on the y-axis, with points ordered by posterior probability for main component.

**Value**

Invisible matrix of posterior probabilities `z` from `mclustsummary`.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Hennig, C. (2010) Methods for merging Gaussian mixture components, *Advances in Data Analysis and Classification*, 4, 3-34.

**Examples**

```
require(mclust)
require(MASS)
data(crabs)
dc <- crabs[,4:8]
cm <- mclustBIC(crabs[,4:8],G=9,modelNames="EEE")
scm <- summary(cm,crabs[,4:8])
```

```
weightplots(scm$z,clusternumbers=1:3,ask=FALSE)
weightplots(scm$z,clusternumbers=1:3,allcol=1:9, ask=FALSE,
            legendposition=c(5,0.7))
# Remove ask=FALSE to have time to watch the plots.
```

---

wfu

*Weight function (for Mahalabobis distances)*


---

### Description

Function of the elements of md, which is 1 for arguments smaller than ca, 0 for arguments larger than ca2 and linear (default: continuous) in between.

Thought for use in `fixmahal`.

### Usage

```
wfu(md, ca, ca2, a1 = 1/(ca - ca2), a0 = -a1 * ca2)
```

### Arguments

md	vector of positive numericals.
ca	positive numerical.
ca2	positive numerical.
a1	numerical. Slope.
a0	numerical. Intercept.

### Value

A vector of numericals between 0 and 1.

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### See Also

[fixmahal](#)

### Examples

```
md <- seq(0,10,by=0.1)
round(wfu(md,ca=5,ca2=8),digits=2)
```

---

xtable	<i>Partition crosstable with empty clusters</i>
--------	---

---

### Description

This produces a crosstable between two integer vectors (partitions) of the same length with a given maximum vector entry  $k$  so that the size of the table is  $k \times k$  with zeroes for missing entries between 1 and  $k$  (the command `table` does pretty much the same thing but will leave out missing entries).

### Usage

```
xtable(c1,c2,k)
```

### Arguments

`c1`            vector of integers.  
`c2`            vector of integers of same length as `c1`.  
`k`             integer. Must be larger or equal to maximum entry in `c1` and `c2`.

### Value

A matrix of dimensions  $c(k,k)$ . Entry  $[i,j]$  gives the number of places in which  $c1==i$  &  $c2==j$ .

### Author(s)

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

### See Also

[table](#)

### Examples

```
c1 <- 1:3  
c2 <- c(1,1,2)  
xtable(c1,c2,3)
```

---

`zmisclassification.matrix`*Matrix of misclassification probabilities between mixture components*

---

**Description**

Matrix of misclassification probabilities in a mixture distribution between two mixture components from estimated posterior probabilities regardless of component parameters, see Hennig (2010).

**Usage**

```
zmisclassification.matrix(z,pro=NULL,clustering=NULL,  
                          ipairs="all",symmetric=TRUE,  
                          stat="max")
```

**Arguments**

<code>z</code>	matrix of posterior probabilities for observations (rows) to belong to mixture components (columns), so entries need to sum up to 1 for each row.
<code>pro</code>	vector of component proportions, need to sum up to 1. Computed from <code>z</code> as default.
<code>clustering</code>	vector of integers giving the estimated mixture components for every observation. Computed from <code>z</code> as default.
<code>ipairs</code>	"all" or list of vectors of two integers. If <code>ipairs="all"</code> , computations are carried out for all pairs of components. Otherwise, <code>ipairs</code> gives the pairs of components for which computations are carried out.
<code>symmetric</code>	logical. If TRUE, the matrix is symmetrised, see parameter <code>stat</code> .
<code>stat</code>	"max" or "mean". The statistic by which the two misclassification probabilities are aggregated if <code>symmetric=TRUE</code> .

**Value**

A matrix with the (symmetrised, if required) misclassification probabilities between each pair of mixture components. If `symmetric=FALSE`, matrix entry `[i, j]` is the estimated probability that an observation generated by component `j` is classified to component `i` by maximum a posteriori rule.

**Author(s)**

Christian Hennig <[christian.hennig@unibo.it](mailto:christian.hennig@unibo.it)> <https://www.unibo.it/sitoweb/christian.hennig/en/>

**References**

Hennig, C. (2010) Methods for merging Gaussian mixture components, *Advances in Data Analysis and Classification*, 4, 3-34.

**See Also**[confusion](#)**Examples**

```
set.seed(12345)
m <- rpois(20, lambda=5)
dim(m) <- c(5,4)
m <- m/apply(m,1,sum)
round(zmisclassification.matrix(m,symmetric=FALSE),digits=2)
```



# Index

- \* **arith**
  - can, 16
  - cweight, 59
  - wfu, 157
- \* **array**
  - con.comp, 48
  - solvecov, 145
  - tdecomp, 151
  - xtable, 158
- \* **classif**
  - adcoord, 6
  - ancoord, 8
  - awcoord, 9
  - batcoord, 11
  - discrcoord, 64
  - discrproj, 67
  - distrsimilarity, 72
  - mvdcoord, 116
  - ncoord, 117
  - plotcluster, 129
- \* **cluster**
  - bhattacharyya.matrix, 14
  - calinhara, 15
  - cdbw, 18
  - cgestandard, 19
  - classifdist, 21
  - clucols, 23
  - clujaccard, 24
  - clusexpect, 25
  - clustatsum, 26
  - cluster.magazine, 29
  - cluster.stats, 31
  - cluster.varstats, 35
  - clusterbenchstats, 37
  - clusterboot, 41
  - cmahal, 47
  - con.comp, 48
  - confusion, 49
  - cqcluster.stats, 51
  - cvnn, 58
  - dbscan, 60
  - dipp.tantrum, 62
  - diptest.multi, 63
  - distancefactor, 69
  - distcritmulti, 70
  - distrsimilarity, 72
  - dridgeline, 73
  - dudahart2, 74
  - extract.mixturepars, 75
  - findrep, 76
  - fixmahal, 77
  - fixreg, 84
  - flexmixedruns, 90
  - fpclusters, 92
  - itnumber, 93
  - kmeansCBI, 95
  - kmeansruns, 100
  - lcmixed, 102
  - mahalconf, 107
  - mergenormals, 108
  - mergeparameters, 112
  - minsize, 113
  - mixdens, 114
  - mixpredictive, 115
  - neginc, 119
  - nselectboot, 120
  - pamk, 122
  - piridge, 124
  - piridge.zeroes, 125
  - plot.valstat, 126
  - prediction.strength, 131
  - randcmatrix, 133
  - randomclustersim, 135
  - regmix, 137
  - ridgeline, 141
  - ridgeline.diagnosis, 142
  - stupidkaven, 147
  - stupidkcentroids, 148

- stupidkfn, 149
  - stupidknn, 150
  - valstat.object, 153
  - weightplots, 155
  - zmisclassification.matrix, 159
  - \* **datasets**
    - tonedata, 152
  - \* **data**
    - rFace, 140
  - \* **distribution**
    - randconf, 134
  - \* **manip**
    - cat2bin, 17
    - discrete.recode, 65
    - jittervar, 94
  - \* **multivariate**
    - adcoord, 6
    - ancoord, 8
    - awcoord, 9
    - batcoord, 11
    - bhattacharyya.dist, 13
    - bhattacharyya.matrix, 14
    - cgrestandard, 19
    - classifdist, 21
    - clustatsum, 26
    - cluster.magazine, 29
    - cluster.stats, 31
    - clusterbenchstats, 37
    - clusterboot, 41
    - confusion, 49
    - cov.wml, 50
    - cqcluster.stats, 51
    - dbscan, 60
    - diptest.multi, 63
    - discrcoord, 64
    - discrproj, 67
    - distrsimilarity, 72
    - dridgeline, 73
    - extract.mixturepars, 75
    - fixmahal, 77
    - kmeansCBI, 95
    - kmeansruns, 100
    - localshape, 104
    - mahalanodisc, 105
    - mahalanofix, 106
    - mahalconf, 107
    - mergenormals, 108
    - mergeparameters, 112
    - mixdens, 114
    - mixpredictive, 115
    - mvdcoord, 116
    - ncoord, 117
    - nselectboot, 120
    - pamk, 122
    - piridge, 124
    - piridge.zeros, 125
    - plot.valstat, 126
    - plotcluster, 129
    - prediction.strength, 131
    - randomclustersim, 135
    - ridgeline, 141
    - ridgeline.diagnosis, 142
    - stupidkaven, 147
    - stupidkcentroids, 148
    - stupidkfn, 149
    - stupidknn, 150
    - weightplots, 155
    - zmisclassification.matrix, 159
  - \* **regression**
    - fixreg, 84
    - regmix, 137
  - \* **robust**
    - fixmahal, 77
    - fixreg, 84
  - \* **univar**
    - clusexpect, 25
    - itnumber, 93
    - minsize, 113
    - unimodal.ind, 152
  - \* **utilities**
    - simmatrix, 144
    - sseg, 146
- 
- adcoord, 6, 67, 68, 129, 131
  - ancoord, 8, 67, 68, 129, 131
  - awcoord, 9, 59, 67, 68, 105, 129, 131
  - batcoord, 11, 65, 67, 68, 81, 83, 129, 131
  - batvarcoord (batcoord), 11
  - bhattacharyya.dist, 13, 15
  - bhattacharyya.matrix, 14, 110
  - calinhara, 4, 15, 34, 57, 100, 102, 122
  - can, 16, 85, 89
  - cat2bin, 17
  - cdbw, 18, 76, 77
  - cgrestandard, 19, 26, 39, 40, 154

- clara, *5, 45, 97, 98, 100, 122, 123*
- claraCBI, *46, 120, 121, 132*
- claraCBI (kmeansCBI), *95*
- classifdist, *21, 120, 121, 132*
- classifnp, *120, 121, 132, 133*
- classifnp (classifdist), *21*
- clucols, *23*
- clugrey (clucols), *23*
- clujaccard, *24*
- clusexpect, *25, 87, 89, 94, 113, 114*
- clustatsum, *19–21, 26, 39, 40, 136, 137*
- cluster.magazine, *29, 39, 40, 127, 128*
- cluster.stats, *16, 31, 51, 57, 71, 73, 75*
- cluster.varstats, *35*
- clusterbenchstats, *19–21, 26, 30, 37, 51, 126–128, 154, 155*
- clusterboot, *34, 41, 57, 95, 98, 100, 120, 121, 132*
- clusym (clucols), *23*
- cmahal, *47, 79, 83*
- cmdscale, *97*
- con.comp, *48*
- confusion, *49, 160*
- cov, *51*
- cov.rob, *8, 10, 78, 83, 106, 107, 116, 118*
- cov.wml, *50, 83*
- cov.wt, *50, 51*
- covMcd, *104*
- cqcluster.stats, *4, 26–28, 34, 38–40, 51, 73, 136, 153, 154*
- cutree, *49*
- cvnn, *58*
- cweight, *59*
  
- daisy, *70, 71*
- data.matrix, *66*
- dbscan, *45, 60, 98–100*
- dbscanCBI, *46*
- dbscanCBI (kmeansCBI), *95*
- density, *62, 152, 153*
- dip, *62, 63*
- dip.test, *62, 63, 110*
- dipp.tantrum, *62, 110*
- diptest.multi, *63*
- discrcoord, *12, 13, 64, 67, 68, 129, 131, 151*
- discrete.recode, *18, 65, 92, 103*
- discrproj, *5, 7, 9, 11, 35, 36, 67, 117, 119, 131*
- dist, *34, 46, 57, 70, 71, 100*
  
- distancefactor, *69*
- distcritmulti, *33, 34, 57, 70, 122, 123*
- disthclustCBI, *46*
- disthclustCBI (kmeansCBI), *95*
- disthclusttreeCBI (kmeansCBI), *95*
- distnoisemclustCBI, *46*
- distnoisemclustCBI (kmeansCBI), *95*
- distrsimilarity, *4, 26–28, 38, 39, 72, 135, 136, 154*
- dridgeline, *73, 144*
- dudahart2, *4, 74, 100–102, 122, 123*
  
- eigen, *146*
- EMclust, *139*
- emskewCBI (kmeansCBI), *95*
- extract.mixturepars, *75, 110*
  
- findrep, *76*
- fixmahal, *45, 47, 48, 77, 89, 92, 93, 98–100, 106–108, 144, 145, 157*
- fixreg, *16, 17, 25, 83, 84, 92–94, 113, 114, 139, 144, 145*
- flexmix, *4, 92, 102, 103, 139*
- flexmixedruns, *90, 102, 103*
- fpc-package, *4*
- fpclusters, *92*
- fpclusters.mfpc (fixmahal), *77*
- fpclusters.rfpc (fixreg), *84*
- fpmi (fixmahal), *77*
  
- grey, *23*
  
- hc, *97*
- hclust, *49, 97, 98, 100*
- hclustCBI, *38, 46, 154*
- hclustCBI (kmeansCBI), *95*
- hclusttreeCBI, *46*
- hclusttreeCBI (kmeansCBI), *95*
  
- isoMDS, *97*
- itnumber, *85, 89, 93, 114*
  
- jitter, *94, 95*
- jittervar, *94*
  
- kmeans, *5, 44, 98, 100–102*
- kmeansCBI, *5, 27, 29, 30, 37, 38, 40, 44–46, 95, 120, 121, 132, 133, 154*
- kmeansruns, *98, 100, 100*
- knn, *22*

- lcmixed, [66](#), [70](#), [92](#), [102](#)
- lda, [22](#)
- legend, [156](#)
- localshape, [104](#)
- mahalanodisc, [105](#)
- mahalanofix, [106](#)
- mahalanofuz (mahalanofix), [106](#)
- mahalCBI, [46](#)
- mahalCBI (kmeansCBI), [95](#)
- mahalconf, [79](#), [80](#), [83](#), [107](#)
- mclapply, [39](#), [136](#)
- mclustBIC, [43–45](#), [75](#), [97](#), [98](#), [100](#), [109](#), [111](#)
- mclustModelNames, [114](#)
- mergenormals, [45](#), [98](#), [99](#), [108](#), [115](#), [116](#)
- mergenormCBI (kmeansCBI), [95](#)
- mergeparameters, [110](#), [112](#)
- minsize, [89](#), [113](#)
- mixdens, [114](#)
- mixpredictive, [110](#), [115](#)
- mvdcoord, [67](#), [68](#), [116](#), [129](#), [131](#)
- ncoord, [67](#), [68](#), [117](#), [129](#), [131](#)
- neginc, [119](#)
- NNclean, [97](#), [100](#)
- noisemclustCBI, [46](#)
- noisemclustCBI (kmeansCBI), [95](#)
- nselectboot, [23](#), [27](#), [28](#), [38](#), [120](#), [136](#)
- pam, [5](#), [22](#), [45](#), [70](#), [97](#), [98](#), [100](#), [122](#), [123](#)
- pam.object, [100](#), [122](#)
- pamk, [45](#), [98](#), [100](#), [102](#), [122](#)
- pamkCBI, [46](#), [120](#), [132](#)
- pamkCBI (kmeansCBI), [95](#)
- par, [80](#), [86](#), [130](#)
- pdfclustCBI (kmeansCBI), [95](#)
- pdfCluster, [99](#), [100](#)
- piridge, [124](#), [144](#)
- piridge.zeroes, [125](#), [144](#)
- plot.clboot (clusterboot), [41](#)
- plot.dbscan (dbscan), [60](#)
- plot.mfpc (fixmahal), [77](#)
- plot.rfpc (fixreg), [84](#)
- plot.valstat, [126](#), [155](#)
- plotcluster, [7](#), [9](#), [11](#), [13](#), [44](#), [65](#), [83](#), [117](#), [119](#), [129](#)
- predict.dbscan (dbscan), [60](#)
- prediction.strength, [23](#), [27](#), [28](#), [38](#), [116](#), [131](#), [136](#)
- print.clboot (clusterboot), [41](#)
- print.clusterbenchstats (clusterbenchstats), [37](#)
- print.dbscan (dbscan), [60](#)
- print.mfpc (fixmahal), [77](#)
- print.predstr (prediction.strength), [131](#)
- print.rfpc (fixreg), [84](#)
- print.summary.cquality (cqcluster.stats), [51](#)
- print.summary.mergenorm (mergenormals), [108](#)
- print.summary.mfpc (fixmahal), [77](#)
- print.summary.rfpc (fixreg), [84](#)
- print.table, [127](#)
- print.valstat, [4](#), [37](#)
- print.valstat (plot.valstat), [126](#)
- print.varwisetables (cluster.varstats), [35](#)
- qda, [22](#)
- randcmatrix, [133](#), [138](#)
- randconf, [134](#)
- randomclustersim, [19](#), [20](#), [39](#), [126](#), [135](#)
- regem (regmix), [137](#)
- regmix, [89](#), [134](#), [137](#)
- rFace, [7](#), [9](#), [11](#), [13](#), [65](#), [68](#), [83](#), [117](#), [119](#), [131](#), [140](#)
- rfpi (fixreg), [84](#)
- ridgeline, [141](#), [144](#)
- ridgeline.diagnosis, [109](#), [110](#), [142](#)
- sammon, [97](#)
- sample, [135](#)
- scale, [29](#), [38](#)
- silhouette, [27](#), [33](#), [34](#), [55](#), [57](#), [71](#), [154](#)
- simmatrix, [144](#)
- solve, [146](#)
- solvecov, [81](#), [83](#), [105–108](#), [145](#)
- specc, [45](#), [99](#)
- speccCBI (kmeansCBI), [95](#)
- sseg, [82](#), [83](#), [88](#), [89](#), [144](#), [145](#), [146](#)
- stupidkaven, [21](#), [39](#), [99](#), [127](#), [135–137](#), [147](#), [148–150](#)
- stupidkavenCBI (kmeansCBI), [95](#)
- stupidkcentroids, [4](#), [21](#), [39](#), [99](#), [127](#), [135–137](#), [147](#), [148](#), [149](#), [150](#)
- stupidkcentroidsCBI (kmeansCBI), [95](#)

stupidkfn, [21](#), [39](#), [99](#), [127](#), [135–137](#), [147](#),  
[148](#), [149](#), [150](#)  
stupidkfnCBI (kmeansCBI), [95](#)  
stupidknn, [4](#), [21](#), [39](#), [99](#), [127](#), [135–137](#),  
[147–149](#), [150](#)  
stupidknnCBI (kmeansCBI), [95](#)  
summary.cquality, [27](#)  
summary.cquality (cqcluster.stats), [51](#)  
summary.mclustBIC, [75](#), [76](#), [97](#), [109](#), [114](#), [156](#)  
summary.mergenorm (mergenormals), [108](#)  
summary.mfpc (fixmahal), [77](#)  
summary.rfpc (fixreg), [84](#)

table, [158](#)  
tclust, [43](#), [100](#)  
tclustCBI (kmeansCBI), [95](#)  
tdecomp, [7](#), [8](#), [10](#), [64](#), [151](#)  
tonedata, [152](#)  
try, [91](#)

unimodal.ind, [152](#)

valstat.object, [20](#), [21](#), [39](#), [40](#), [128](#), [153](#)  
var, [51](#)

weightplots, [155](#)  
wfu, [79](#), [80](#), [83](#), [157](#)

xtable, [158](#)

zmisclassification.matrix, [159](#)